32

# RH850G3K

User's Manual: Software

Renesas microcontroller
RH850 Family

Renesas Electronics
www.renesas.com

Rev.1.00　Aug, 2014

## Notice

1. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.

2. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.

3. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.

4. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from such alteration, modification, copy or otherwise misappropriation of Renesas Electronics product.

5. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following two quality grades: "Standard" and "High Quality". The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product's quality grade, as indicated below.

   "Standard": Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots etc.

   "High Quality": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti-crime systems; and safety equipment etc.

   Renesas Electronics products are neither intended nor authorized for use in products or systems that may pose a direct threat to human life or bodily injury (artificial life support devices or systems, surgical implantations etc.), or may cause serious property damages (nuclear reactor control systems, military equipment etc.). You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for which the product is not intended by Renesas Electronics.

6. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.

7. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or systems manufactured by you.

8. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.

9. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. When exporting the Renesas Electronics products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations.

10. It is the responsibility of the buyer or distributor of Renesas Electronics products, who distributes, disposes of, or otherwise places the product with a third party, to notify such third party in advance of the contents and conditions set forth in this document, Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties as a result of unauthorized use of Renesas Electronics products.

11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.

12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.

(Note 1) "Renesas Electronics" as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(Note 2) "Renesas Electronics product(s)" means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.

(2012.4)

## NOTES FOR CMOS DEVICES

(1) **VOLTAGE APPLICATION WAVEFORM AT INPUT PIN:** Waveform distortion due to input noise or a reflected wave may cause malfunction. If the input of the CMOS device stays in the area between VIL (MAX) and VIH (MIN) due to noise, etc., the device may malfunction. Take care to prevent chattering noise from entering the device when the input level is fixed, and also in the transition period when the input level passes through the area between VIL (MAX) and VIH (MIN).

(2) **HANDLING OF UNUSED INPUT PINS:** Unconnected CMOS device inputs can be cause of malfunction. If an input pin is unconnected, it is possible that an internal input level may be generated due to noise, etc., causing malfunction. CMOS devices behave differently than Bipolar or NMOS devices. Input levels of CMOS devices must be fixed high or low by using pull-up or pull-down circuitry. Each unused pin should be connected to VDD or GND via a resistor if there is a possibility that it will be an output pin. All handling related to unused pins must be judged separately for each device and according to related specifications governing the device.

(3) **PRECAUTION AGAINST ESD:** A strong electric field, when exposed to a MOS device, can cause destruction of the gate oxide and ultimately degrade the device operation. Steps must be taken to stop generation of static electricity as much as possible, and quickly dissipate it when it has occurred. Environmental control must be adequate. When it is dry, a humidifier should be used. It is recommended to avoid using insulators that easily build up static electricity. Semiconductor devices must be stored and transported in an anti-static container, static shielding bag or conductive material. All test and measurement tools including work benches and floors should be grounded. The operator should be grounded using a wrist strap. Semiconductor devices must not be touched with bare hands. Similar precautions need to be taken for PW boards with mounted semiconductor devices.

(4) **STATUS BEFORE INITIALIZATION:** Power-on does not necessarily define the initial status of a MOS device. Immediately after the power source is turned ON, devices with reset functions have not yet been initialized. Hence, power-on does not guarantee output pin levels, I/O settings or contents of registers. A device is not initialized until the reset signal is received. A reset operation must be executed immediately after power-on for devices with reset functions.

(5) **POWER ON/OFF SEQUENCE:** In the case of a device that uses different power supplies for the internal operation and external interface, as a rule, switch on the external power supply after switching on the internal power supply. When switching the power supply off, as a rule, switch off the external power supply and then the internal power supply. Use of the reverse power on/off sequences may result in the application of an overvoltage to the internal elements of the device, causing malfunction and degradation of internal elements due to the passage of an abnormal current. The correct power on/off sequence must be judged separately for each device and according to related specifications governing the device.

(6) **INPUT OF SIGNAL DURING POWER OFF STATE :** Do not input signals or an I/O pull-up power supply while the device is not powered. The current injection that results from input of such a signal or I/O pull-up power supply may cause malfunction and the abnormal current that passes in the device at this time may cause degradation of internal elements. Input of signals during the power off state must be judged separately for each device and according to related specifications governing the device.

# How to Use This Manual

**Target and Readers**      This manual is intended for users who wish to understand the RH850G3K software and design application systems using these products.

**Conventions**

| | |
|---|---|
| Data significance: | Higher digits on the left and lower digits on the right |
| Active low representation: | $\overline{\text{xxx}}$ (overscore over pin or signal name) |
| Memory map address: | Higher addresses on the top and lower addresses on the bottom |
| **Note**: | Footnote for item marked with **Note** in the text |
| **Caution**: | Information requiring particular attention |
| **Remark**: | Supplementary information |
| Numeric representation: | Binary ... xxxx or xxxxB |
| | Decimal ... xxxx |
| | Hexadecimal ... xxxxH |

Prefix indicating power of 2 (address space, memory capacity):

    K (kilo): $2^{10} = 1{,}024$

    M (mega): $2^{20} = 1{,}024^2$

    G (giga): $2^{30} = 1{,}024^3$

# Table of Contents

# CHAPTER 1  OVERVIEW

## 1.1   Features of the RH850G3K

The RH850G3K features backward compatibility with the instruction set for the 32-bit RISC microcontroller V850 Series.

The RH850G3K provides basic functions for multi-core systems, such as exclusive control between multiple cores.

**Table 1-1** shows the features of the RH850G3K.

**Table 1-1  Features of the RH850G3K**

| Item | Features |
|---|---|
| CPU | • High performance 32-bit architecture for embedded control |
| | • 32-bit internal data bus |
| | • Thirty-two 32-bit general-purpose registers |
| | • RISC type instruction set (backward compatible with V850, V850E1, and V850E2) |
| | Long/short type load/store instructions |
| | Three-operand instructions |
| | Instruction set based on C |
| | • CPU operating modes |
| | User mode and supervisor mode |
| | • Address space: 128-Mbyte linear space for both data and instructions |
| Coprocessor | • The product does not have a coprocessor. |
| Exceptions/interrupts | • Number of scalable interrupt channels |
| | • 8-level interrupt priority that can be specified for each channel |
| | • Vector selection method that can be selected according to performance requirements and the amount of consumed memory |
| | Direct branch method exception vector (direct vector method) |
| | Address-table-referencing indirect branch method exception vector (table reference method) |
| | • Support for high-speed context backup and restoration processing on interrupt by using dedicated instructions (PUSHSP, POPSP) |
| Memory management | • A memory protection unit (MPU) can be installed. |
| Caches | • The product does not have a cache. |

## 1.2   Changes from the V850E2M

**Table 1-2  Changes from the V850E2M**

| Item | Changes |
|---|---|
| CPU | • Defined CPU operating modes<br>• Changed the system registers from the bank selection method to the group specification method<br>• The instruction addressing range is 128 Mbytes<br>• Introduced CPU operating modes<br>   User mode and supervisor mode<br>• Introduced a CPU virtualization support function<br>• Added new instructions<br>   LDL.W (handled as LD.W), STC.W (handled as ST.W), BINS, ROTL, LD.DW, ST.DW<br>• High-functional branch instructions<br>   Bcond disp17, JARL[reg1], reg3, LOOP reg1, disp16 |
| Exceptions/interrupts | • Changed the vector selection method<br>• Added new exceptions |
| Coprocessor | • The product does not have a coprocessor. |
| Memory management | • Permitted requests to access the memory when a memory protection violation is detected |

# CHAPTER 2  PROCESSOR MODEL

This CPU defines a processor model that has basic operation functions, registers, and an exception management function. This section describes the unique features of the processor model of this CPU.

## 2.1   CPU Operating Modes

This CPU has defines two operating statuses of the supervisor mode (SV) and the user mode (UM). Whether the system is in supervisor mode or user mode is indicated by the UM bit in the PSW register.

- Supervisor mode (PSW.UM = 0):          All hardware functions can be managed or used.
- User mode (PSW.UM = 1):          The usable hardware functions are restricted.

### 2.1.1  Definition of CPU Operating Modes

**(1)  Supervisor mode (SV)**

All hardware functions can be managed or used in this mode. The system always starts up in supervisor mode after the end of reset processing.

**(2)  User mode (UM)**

This operating mode makes up a pair with the supervisor mode. In user mode, address spaces to which access is permitted by the supervisor and the system registers defined as user resources can be used. Supervisor-privileged instructions cannot be executed and result in exceptions if they are.

---

**Restriction in user mode (PSW.UM = 1)**

- Privileged instruction violations due to SV-privileged-instruction operating restrictions ($\rightarrow$ PIE exceptions)

For details about privileged-instruction operating restrictions, see **2.1.3  CPU Operating Modes and Privileges**.

---

## 2.1.2  CPU Operating Mode Transition

The CPU operating mode changes due to three events.

**(1)  Change due to acknowledging an exception**

When an exception is acknowledged, the CPU operating mode changes to the mode specified for the exception.

**(2)  Change due to a return instruction**

When a return instruction is executed, the PSW value is restored according to the value of the corresponding bit backed up to EIPSW and FEPSW.

**(3)  Change due to a system register instruction**

The CPU operating mode changes when an LDSR instruction is used to directly overwrite the PSW operating mode bits.

---

Cautions 1.  **In supervisor mode, the LDSR instruction can be used to directly change the value of the PSW.UM bit, but system-register-related hazards are defined in the hardware specifications. For the change of this bit, it is recommended to use a return instruction to avoid PSW-register-related hazards.**

2.  **In user mode, the CPU operating mode cannot be changed because the higher 31 to 5 bits of the PSW register cannot be overwritten. The CPU operating mode might be changed in supervisor mode, but system register access-related hazards are defined in the hardware specifications. For the change of this bit, it is recommended to use a return instruction to avoid PSW-register-related hazards.**

---

### 2.1.3  CPU Operating Modes and Privileges

In this CPU, the usable functions can be restricted according to usage permission settings for specific resources and the CPU operating mode. Specification instructions (including instructions that update specific system registers) can only be executed in the defined operating mode. The permissions necessary to execute these specification instructions are called "privileges" below. In operating modes that do not have privileges, these instructions are not executed and exceptions occur.

This CPU defines the following two types of privileges (and usage permission).

- Supervisor (SV) privilege:       Important system resources operation, fatal error processing, privilege necessary for user-mode program execution management
- Coprocessor use permissions:   Permissions necessary to use a coprocessor

**Figure 2-1  CPU Operating Modes and Privileges**
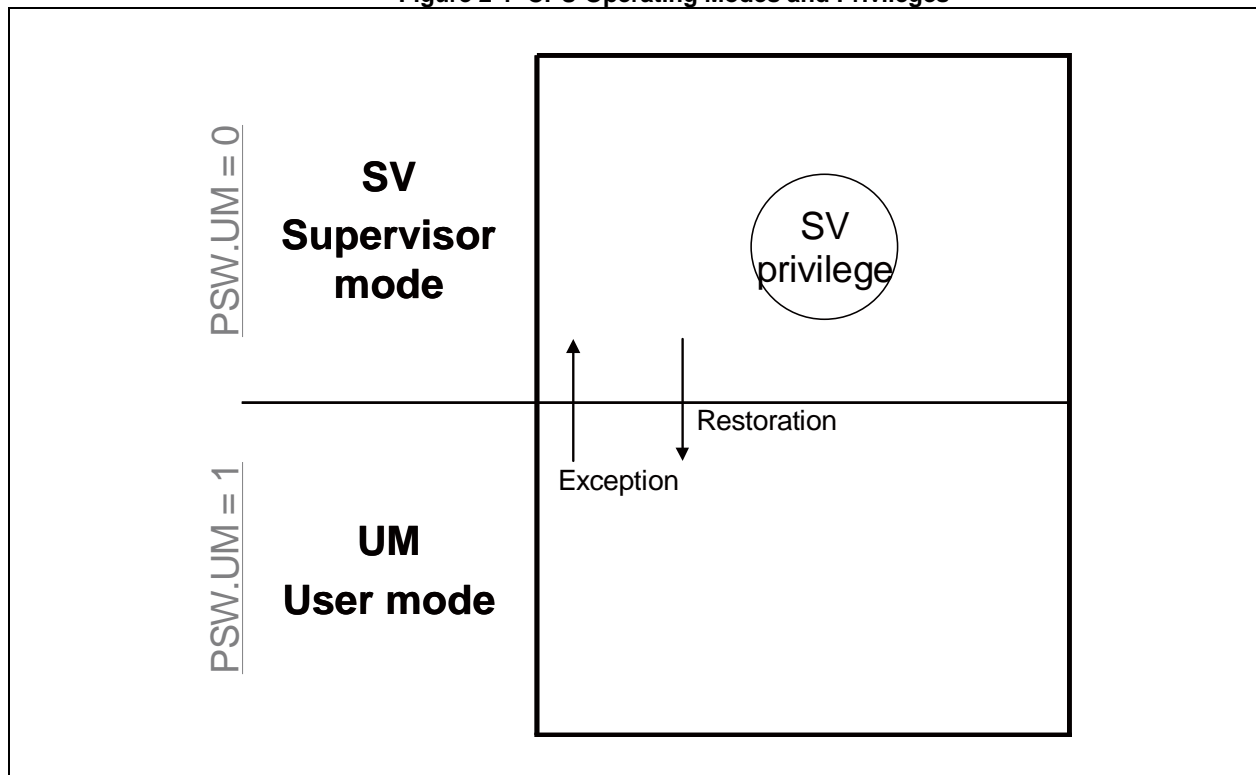
**(1)  Supervisor privilege (SV privilege)**

The privilege necessary to perform the operation for important system resources, fatal error processing, and user-mode program execution management is called the supervisor privilege (SV privilege). This privilege is available in supervisor mode. The SV privilege is generally necessary to execute instructions used to perform the operation for important system resources, and these instructions are sometimes called SV privileged instructions.

**(2)  Coprocessor use permissions**

This CPU does not have a coprocessor, so the CU bits (bits for setting permission to use the coprocessor) in the PSW cannot be set to 1.

Attempting execution of a coprocessor instruction or access to a coprocessor system register leads to a coprocessor unusable exception.

**(3) Operation when there is a privilege violation**

When an attempt is made to execute a privileged instruction by someone who does not have the required privilege, a PIE exception or UCPOP exception occurs. **Table 2-1** shows the relationships between the operating mode, usage permission status, and whether instructions can be executed.

**Table 2-1  Operation When There is a Privilege Violation**

|  | PSW | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | UM | CU2 | CU1 | CU0 | Whether Operation is Possible |
| SV privileged instruction | 0 | — | — | — | Possible |
|  | 1 | — | — | — | Not possible/PIE exception |
| Coprocessor instruction 1[Note] (PSW.CU0 bit) | — | — | — | 1 | Possible |
|  | — | — | — | 0 | Not possible/UCPOP exception |
| Coprocessor instruction 2[Note] (PSW.CU1 bit) | — | — | 1 | — | Possible |
|  | — | — | 0 | — | Not possible/UCPOP exception |
| Coprocessor instruction 3[Note] (PSW.CU2 bit) | — | 1 | — | — | Possible |
|  | — | 0 | — | — | Not possible/UCPOP exception |
| Instructions other than the above (user instructions) | — | — | — | — | Possible |

**Note**   This includes the LDSR instruction for the coprocessor system register.

**Remark**   —: 0 or 1

**Caution**   If a register whose access permission is defined as CU$n$ or SV is accessed when CU$n$ = 0 and UM = 0, a UCPOP exception occurs.

## 2.2   Instruction Execution

The instruction execution flow of this CPU is shown below.

**Figure 2-2  Instruction Execution Flow**
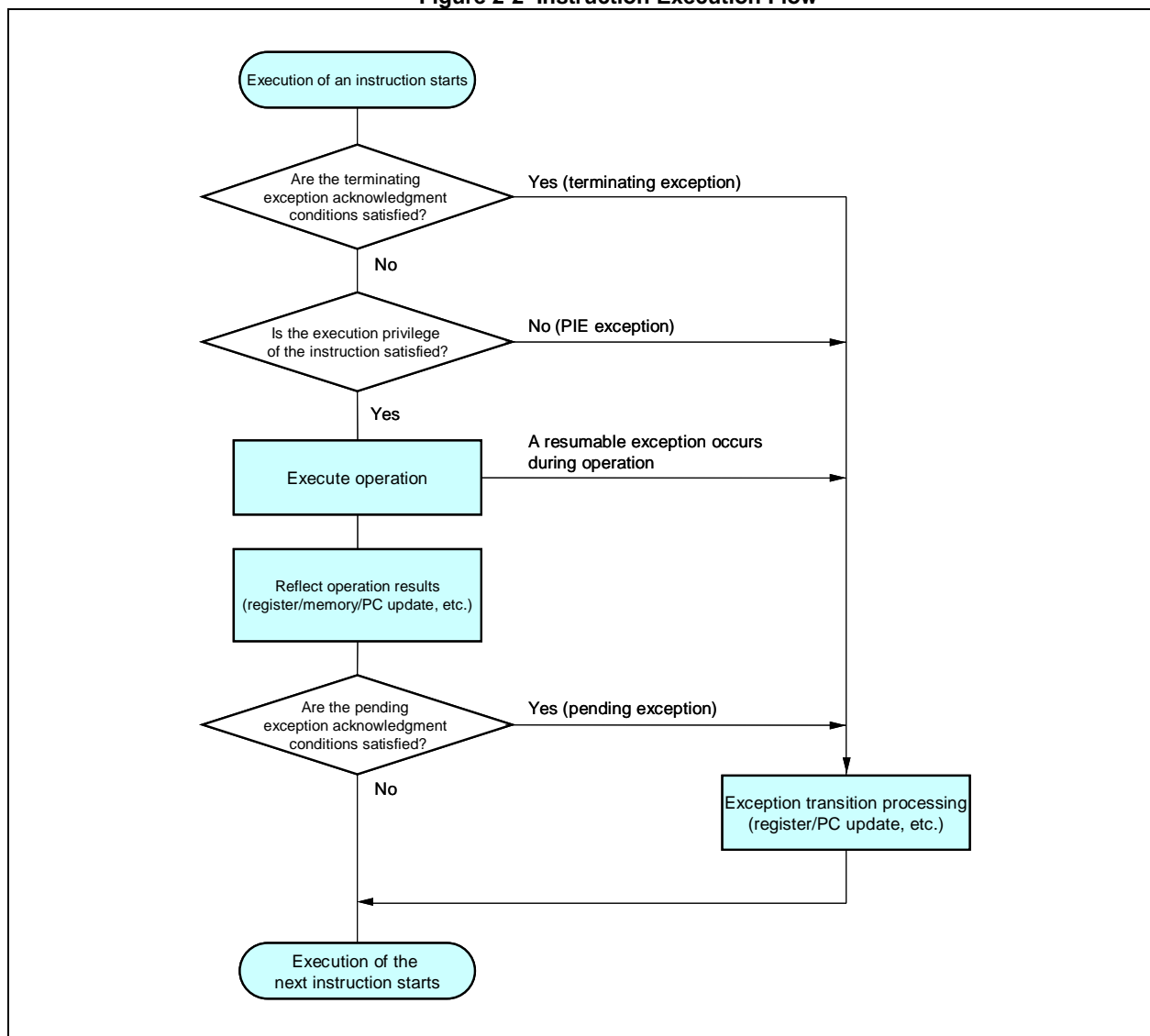


If terminating exceptions can be acknowledged or if the execution privilege of the instruction is not satisfied, an exception occurs before the instruction is executed. If a resumable exception occurs during the execution of an instruction, the exception is acknowledged during execution of the instruction. In these cases, the result of instruction execution is not reflected in the registers or memory, and the CPU state before the instruction was executed is retained**Note**.

For a pending exception such as a software exception, the exception is acknowledged after the result of instruction execution has been reflected.

**Note**   The following instructions might cause intermediate results to be reflected in the memory.

        PREPARE, DISPOSE, PUSHSP, POPSP

## 2.3   Exceptions and Interrupts

Exceptions and interrupts are exceptional events that cause the program under execution to branch to another program.

Exceptions and interrupts are triggered by various sources, including interrupts from peripherals and program abnormalities.

For details, see **CHAPTER 4   EXCEPTIONS AND INTERRUPTS**.

### 2.3.1  Types of Exceptions

This CPU divides exceptions into the following three types according to their purpose.

- Terminating exceptions
- Resumable exceptions
- Pending exceptions

#### (1)  Terminating exceptions

This is an exception acknowledged by interrupting an instruction before its operation is executed. These exceptions include interrupts and imprecise exceptions.

Interrupts are generated by causes such as an interrupt or a hardware error and start up a program that is unrelated to the program currently executing. Imprecise exceptions are caused by instruction operation, but they do not start executing until the current instruction execution finishes; instead, they start executing during execution of the subsequent instruction.

#### (2)  Resumable exceptions

This is an exception acknowledged during the execution of instruction operation before the execution is finished. Because this kind of an exception is correctly acknowledged without executing the next instruction, it is also called a precise exception.

Unlike terminating-type imprecise exceptions, precise exceptions occur during instruction execution and cause the execution of the instruction to stop. It is therefore possible to resume execution of the same instruction after the exception has been processed. By specifying settings appropriate for the exception handling by using a memory management or other function before resuming execution of the same instruction, complex memory management can be achieved while retaining consistency in the logical behavior of the program.

#### (3)  Pending exceptions

This is an exception acknowledged after the execution of an instruction finishes as a result of executing the instruction operation. Pending exceptions include software exceptions.

Because pending exceptions are defined to occur as part of the normal operation of an instruction, unlike resumable-type exceptions, the instruction that caused the exception finishes normally and is not re-executed. These exceptions are mainly used as call gates for calls made by the management program.

### 2.3.2  Exception Level

In this CPU, if an exception with a high degree of urgency occurs while another exception is being processed, the urgent exception will be processed by priority. To make it possible to return to the interrupted exception handling after acknowledging the urgent exception, even if the context had not been saved to the memory, exception causes are managed in the following two hierarchical levels.

- EI level exception
- FE level exception

EI level exceptions are used for processing such as regular user processing, interrupt servicing, and OS processing. FE level exceptions are used to enable interrupts with a high degree of urgency for the system or exceptions from the memory management function that might occur during OS processing to be acknowledged even while an EI level exception is being processed.

## 2.4   Coprocessors

This CPU does not have a coprocessor.

## 2.5   Registers

This CPU defines program registers (general-purpose registers and the program counter PC) and system registers for controlling the status and storing exception information.

### 2.5.1  Program Registers

The program registers include general-purpose registers (r0 to r31) and the program counter (PC).

**Table 2-2  Program Registers**

| Category | Access Permission | Name |
|---|---|---|
| Program counter | UM | PC |
| General-purpose registers | UM | r0 to r31 |

**Remark**   UM: User register. This register can always be accessed because no access permission is required.

### 2.5.2  System Registers

For details about program registers, see **3.1  Program Registers**.

| | |
|---|---|
| Group numbers 0 to 3: | Registers related to basic functions |
| Group numbers 4 to 7: | Registers related to the memory management function |
| Group numbers 12 to 15: | Registers defined in the CPU hardware specifications |
| Group numbers 16 and later: | Reserved for future expansion |

For details about system registers, see the relevant sections in **CHAPTER 3  REGISTER SET**.

### 2.5.3  Register Updating

There are several methods used to update registers. Normally, no particular restrictions apply when updating register by using an instruction. However, when updating registers by using the following instructions, some restrictions might apply, depending on the operating mode.

- LDSR
- STSR

**(1)  LDSR and STSR**

The LDSR and STSR instructions can access all the system registers. However, If a system register is accessed without the proper permission, a PIE exception or UCPOP exception might occur. For details about the access permission for each register, see the description of system registers in **CHAPTER 3  REGISTER SET**. For details about behaviors when a privilege violation occurs, see **2.1.3  CPU Operating Modes and Privileges**.

**Figure 2-3** shows the flow of executing the LDSR and STSR instructions.

**Figure 2-3  Flow of Executing the LDSR and STSR Instructions**
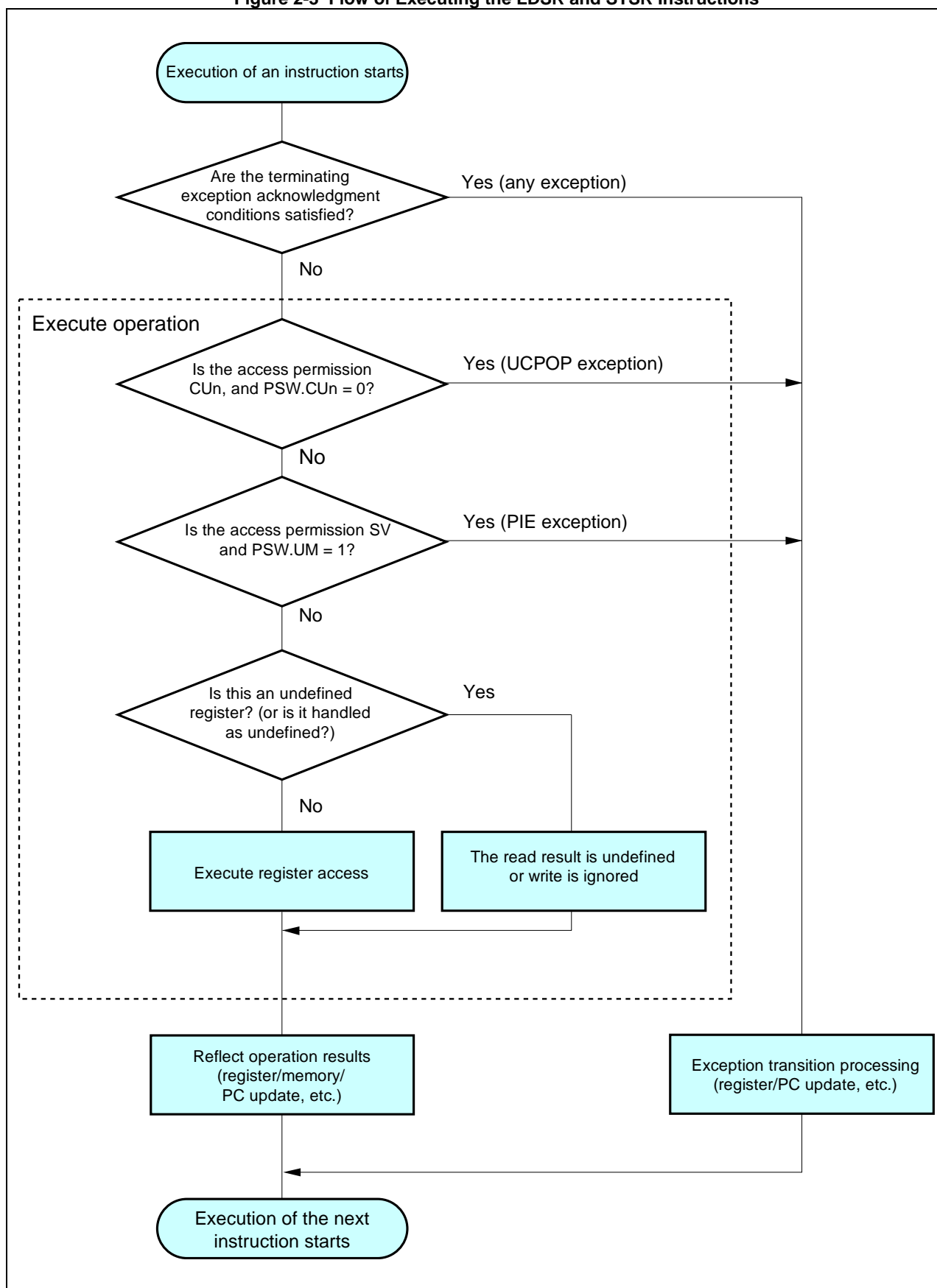
## 2.5.4  Accessing Undefined Registers

If a system register number without any register assigned is accessed or if an inaccessible register is accessed, the following results occur.

- Undefined registers are handled as having the SV permission. When they are accessed by an LDSR or STSR instruction in user mode (PSW.UM = 1), a PIE exception occurs.
- For a read operation, the read result is undefined. If the read value is used in a program, unexpected behaviors might occur.
- For a write operation, the write operation is ignored.
  However, writing to the following system register numbers is prohibited.
  Writing prohibited: [SR10, 1], [SR13, 1], [SR14, 1], [SR15, 1], [SR16, 1], [SR5, 2], [SR20, 5]

## 2.6  Data Types

### 2.6.1  Data formats

This CPU handles data in little endian format. This means that byte 0 of a halfword or a word is always the least significant (rightmost) byte.

The supported data format is as follows.

- Byte (8-bit data)
- Halfword (16-bit data)
- Word (32-bit data)
- Double-word (64-bit data)
- Bit (1-bit data)

### (1)  Byte

A byte is 8 consecutive bits of data that starts from any byte boundary. Numbers from 0 to 7 are assigned to these bits, with bit 0 as the LSB (least significant bit) and bit 7 as the MSB (most significant bit). The byte address is specified as "A".
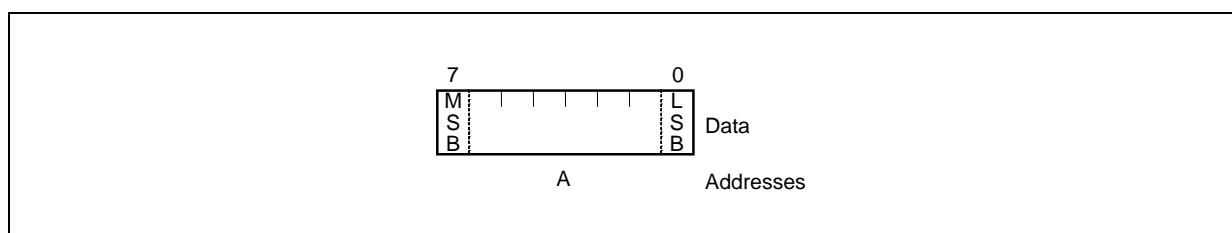


### (2)  Halfword

A halfword is two consecutive bytes (16 bits) of data that starts from any byte boundary. Numbers from 0 to 15 are assigned to these bits, with bit 0 as the LSB and bit 15 as the MSB. The bytes in a halfword are specified using address "A", so that the two addresses comprise byte data of "A" and "A+1".
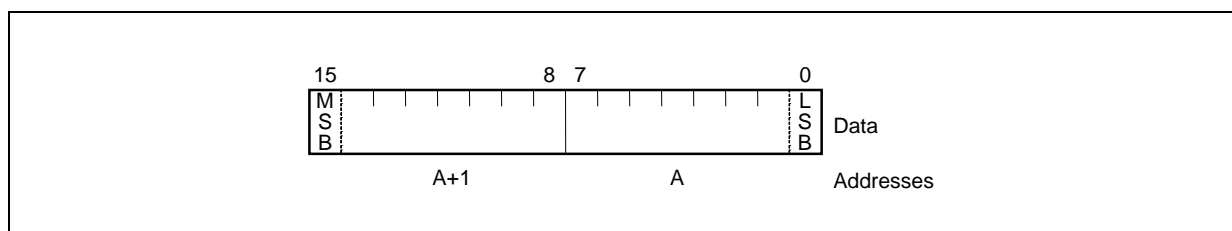
**(3)  Word**

A word is four consecutive bytes (32 bits) of data that starts from any byte boundary. Numbers from 0 to 31 are assigned to these bits, with bit 0 as the LSB (least significant bit) and bit 31 as the MSB (most significant bit). A word is specified by address "A" and consists of byte data of four addresses: "A", "A+1", "A+2", and "A+3".
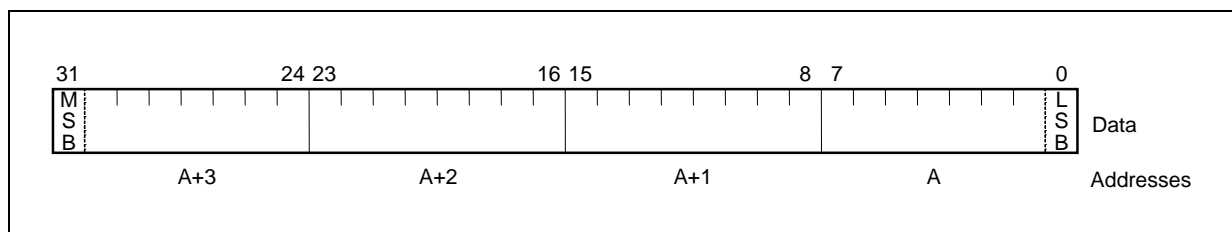


**(4)  Double-word**

A double-word is eight consecutive bytes (64 bits) that start from any 4-byte boundary. Numbers from 0 to 63 are assigned to these bits, with bit 0 as the LSB and bit 63 as the MSB. A double-word is specified by address "A" and consists of byte data of eight addresses: "A", "A+1", "A+2", "A+3", "A+4", "A+5", "A+6", and "A+7".
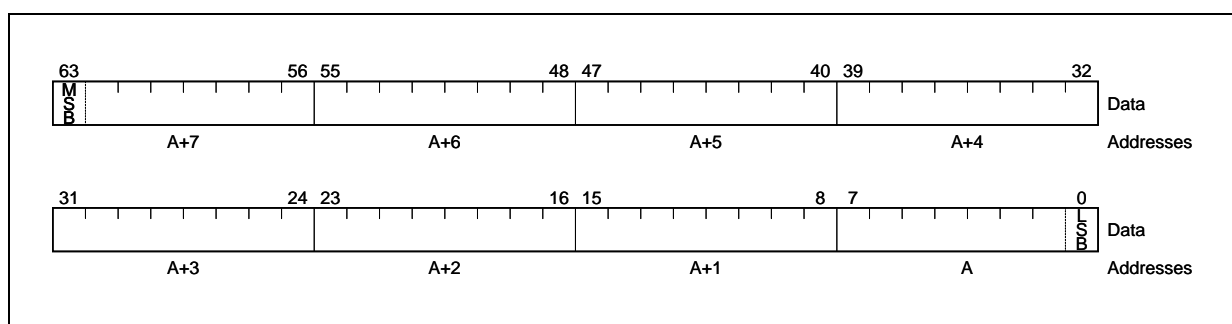


**(5)  Bit**

A bit is bit data at the nth bit within 8-bit data that starts from any byte boundary. Each bit is specified using its byte address "A" and its bit number "n" (n = 0 to 7).
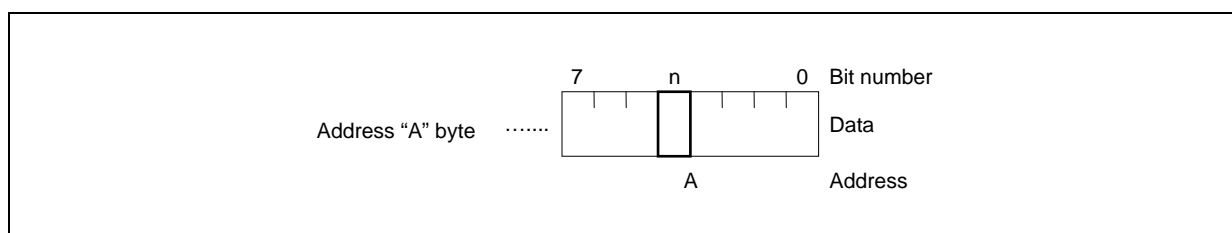
### 2.6.2 Data Representation

#### (1) Integers

Integers are represented as binary values using 2's complement, and are used in one of four lengths: 64 bits, 32 bits, 16 bits, or 8 bits. Regardless of the length of an integer, its place uses bit 0 as the LSB, and this place gets higher as the bit number increases. Because this is a 2's complement representation, the MSB is used as a signed bit.

The integer ranges for various data lengths are as follows.

- Double-word (64 bits): −9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to +9,223,372,036,854,775,807
- Word (32 bits): −2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647
- Halfword (16 bits): −32,768 to +32,767
- Byte (8 bits): −128 to +127

#### (2) Unsigned integers

In contrast to "integers" which are data that can take either a positive or negative sign, "unsigned integers" are never negative integers. Like integers, unsigned integers are represented as binary values, and are used in one of four lengths: 64 bits, 32 bits, 16 bits, or 8 bits. Also like integers, the place of unsigned integers uses bit 0 as the LSB and gets higher as the bit number increases. However, unsigned integers do not use a sign bit.

The unsigned integer ranges for various data lengths are as follows.

- Double-word (64 bits): 0 to 18,446,744,073,709,551,615
- Word (32 bits): 0 to 4,294,967,295
- Halfword (16 bits): 0 to 65,535
- Byte (8 bits): 0 to 255

#### (3) Bits

Bit data are handled as single-bit data with either of two values: cleared (0) or set (1). There are four types of bit-related operations (listed below), which target only single-byte data in the memory space.

- Set
- Clear
- Invert
- Test

## 2.6.3  Data Alignment

The behavior when the result of address calculation is a misaligned address can be selected by using the MCTL.MA bit. If the MCTL.MA bit has been cleared to 0, a misaligned access exception (MAE) occurs. If the MCTL.MA bit has been set to 1, a misaligned access exception (MAE) does not occur and accessing the address is possible.

When the data to be processed is in halfword format, misaligned access indicates the access to an address that is not at the halfword boundary (where the address LSB = 0), and when the data to be processed is in word format, misaligned access indicates the access to an address that is not at the word boundary (where the lower two bits of the address = 0). When the data to be processed is in double-word format, misaligned access indicates the access to an address that is not at the double-word boundary (where the lower 3 bits of the address = 0).

For the double-word format only, a misaligned access exception does not occur when data is placed at the word boundary rather than the double-word boundary.

---

**Cautions 1.   The following instructions might possibly cause misaligned access. For details, see the relevant descriptions in CHAPTER 6  INSTRUCTION.**
- **LD.H, LD.HU, LD.W, LD.DW**
- **SLD.H, SLD.HU, SLD.W**
- **ST.H, ST.W, ST.DW**
- **SST.H, SST.W**
- **LDL.W, STC.W, CAXI**

**2.   The following instructions do not cause misaligned access, because the address is rounded in the instruction specification when the alignment specification is incorrect.**
- **PREPARE, DISPOSE**
- **PUSHSP, POPSP**

**3.   For some hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception does not occur and the hardware performs proper misaligned access. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.**

---

**Figure 2-4  Example of Data Placement for Misaligned Access**
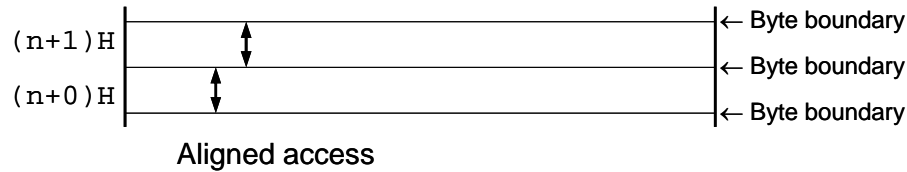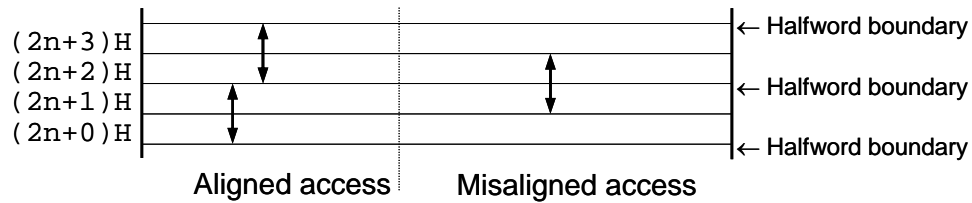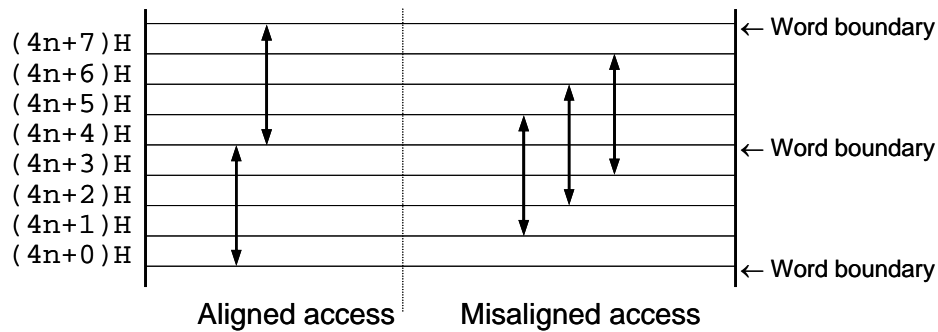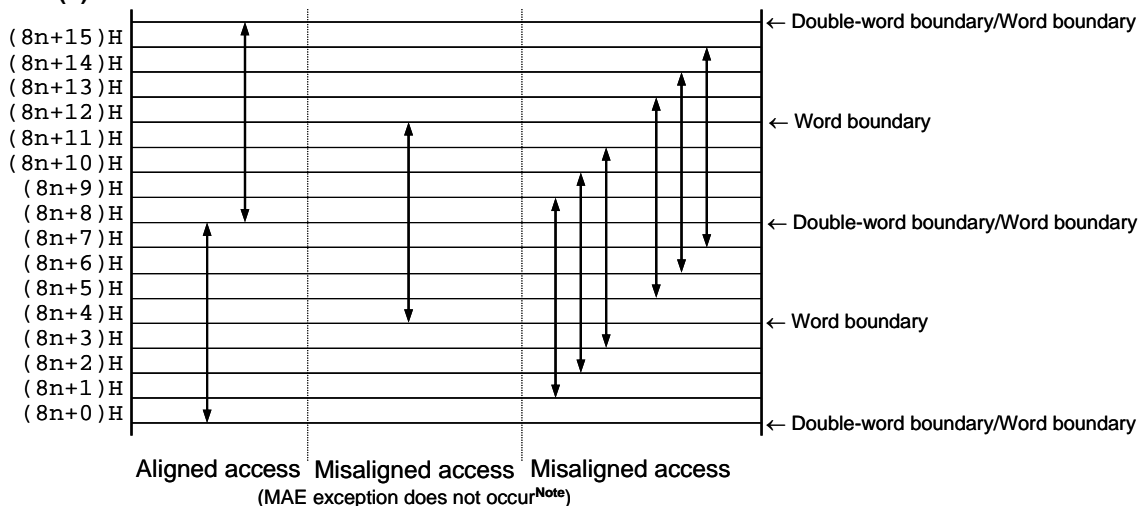


**Note**    For details, see LD.DW and ST.DW in **CHAPTER 6  INSTRUCTION**.

## 2.7   Address Space

This CPU supports a linear address space of up to 4 Gbytes. Both memory and I/O can be mapped to this address space (using the memory mapped I/O method). The CPU outputs a 32-bit address for memory and I/O, in which the highest address number is "$2^{32} - 1$".

The byte data placed at various addresses is defined with bit 0 as the LSB and bit 7 as the MSB. When the data is comprised of multiple bytes, it is defined so that the byte data at the lowest address is the LSB and the byte data at the highest address is the MSB (i.e., in little endian format).

This manual stipulates that, when representing data comprised of multiple bytes, the right edge must be represented as the lower address and the left side as the upper address, as shown below.

**Figure 2-5  Address Space Byte Format**
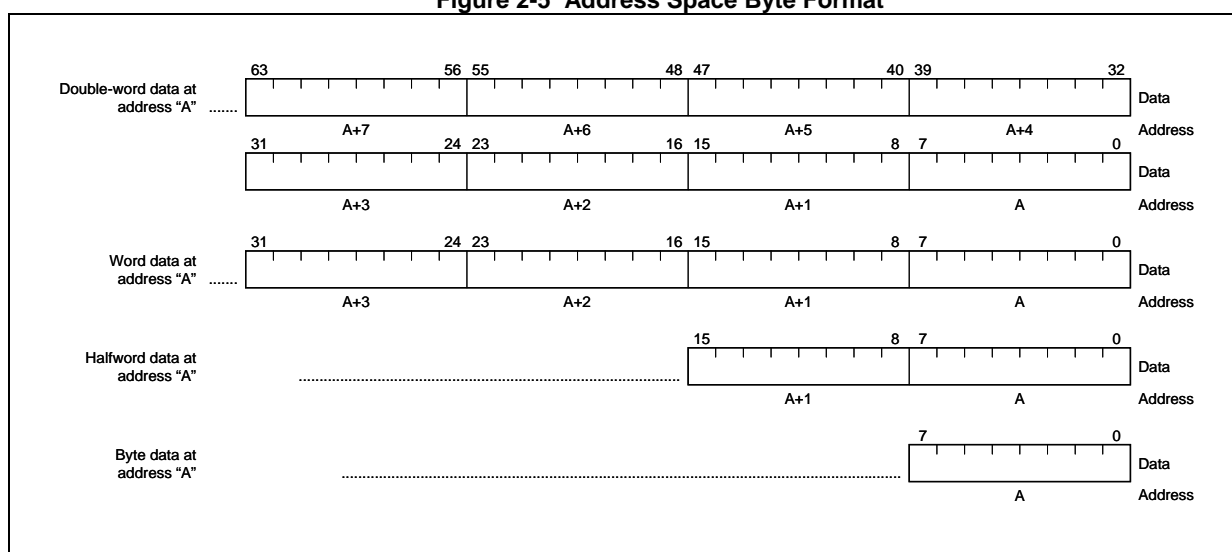
### 2.7.1  Memory Map

This CPU is 32-bit architecture and supports a linear address space of up to 4 Gbytes. The whole range of this 4-Gbyte

address space can be addressed by instruction addressing (instruction access) and operand addressing (data access).

A memory map is shown in **Figure 2-6**.

**Figure 2-6  Memory Map (Address Space)**
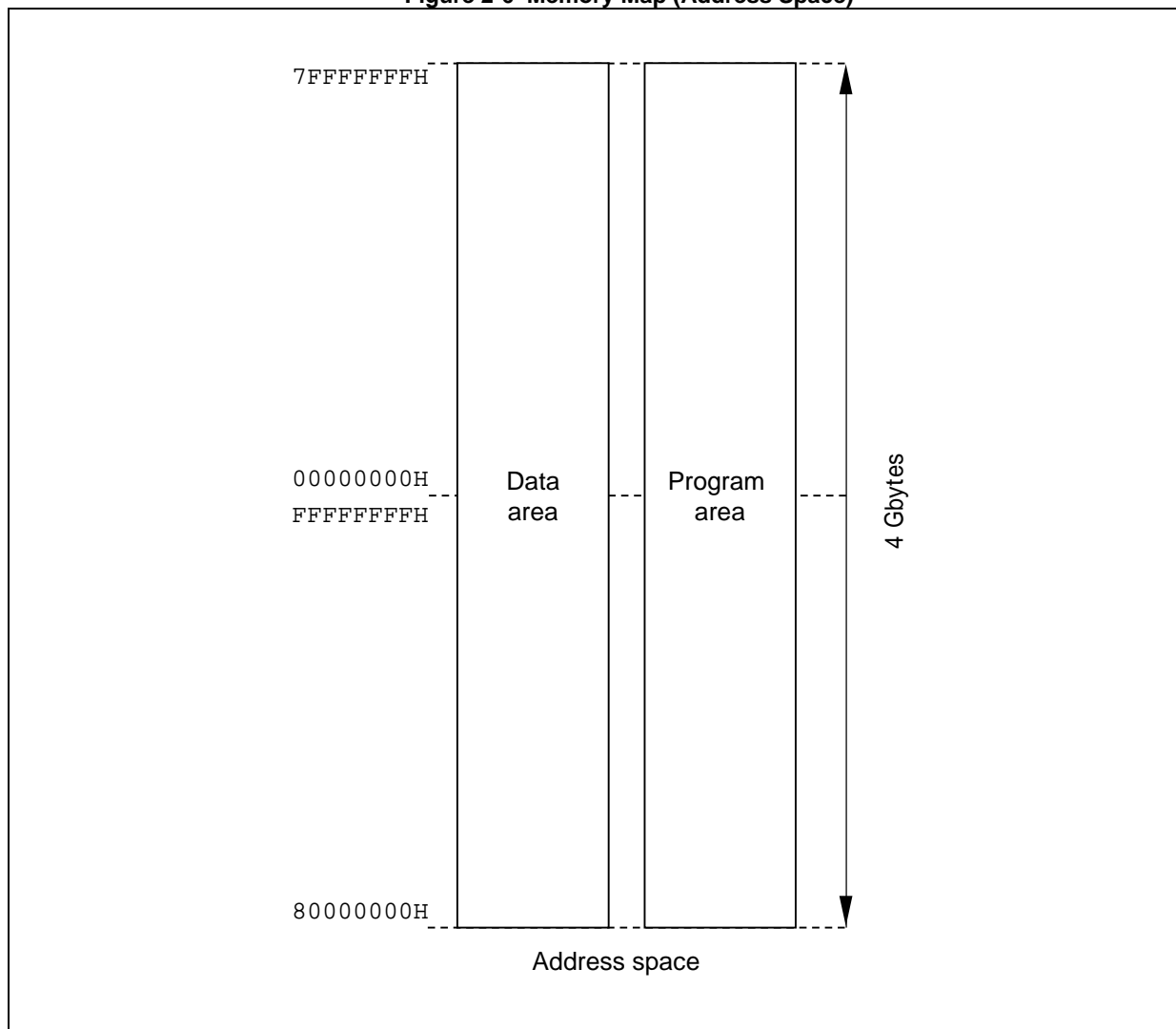
### 2.7.2  Instruction Addressing

The instruction address is determined based on the contents of the program counter (PC), and is automatically incremented according to the number of bytes in the executed instruction. When a branch instruction is executed, the addressing shown below is used to set the branch destination address to the PC.

**(1)  Relative addressing (PC relative)**

Signed N-bit data (displacement: disp N) is added to the instruction code in the program counter (PC). In this case, displacement is handled as 2's complement data, and the MSB is a signed bit (S). If the displacement is less than 32 bits, the higher bits are sign-extended (N differs from one instruction to another).

The JARL, JR, and Bcond instructions are used with this type of addressing.

**Figure 2-7  Relative Addressing**



**Remark**  This is an example of 22-bit displacement.
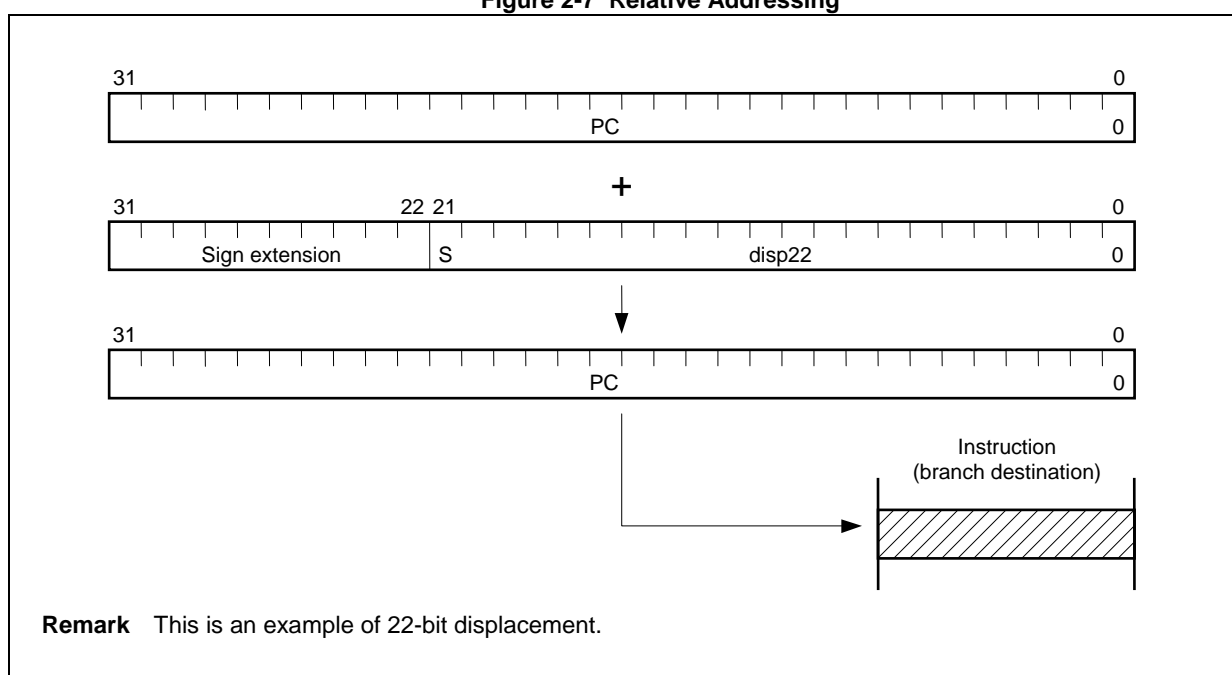
**(2) Register addressing (register indirect)**

The contents of the general-purpose register (reg1) or system register (regID) specified by the instruction are transferred to the program counter (PC).

The JMP, CTRET, EIRET, FERET, and DISPOSE instructions are used with this type of addressing.

**Figure 2-8  Register Addressing**
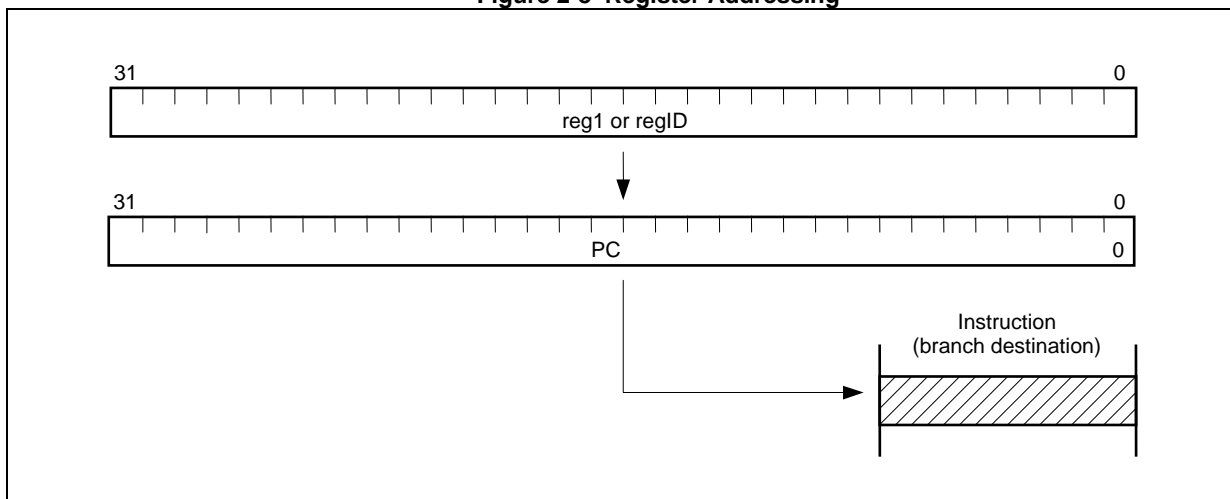


**(3) Based addressing**

Contents that are specified by the instruction in the general-purpose register (reg1) and that include the added N-bit displacement (dispN) are transferred to the program counter (PC). At this time, the displacement is handled as a 2's complement data, and the MSB is a signed bit (S). If the displacement is less than 32 bits, the higher bits are sign-extended (N differs from one instruction to another).

The JMP instruction is used with this type of addressing.

**Figure 2-9  Based Addressing**
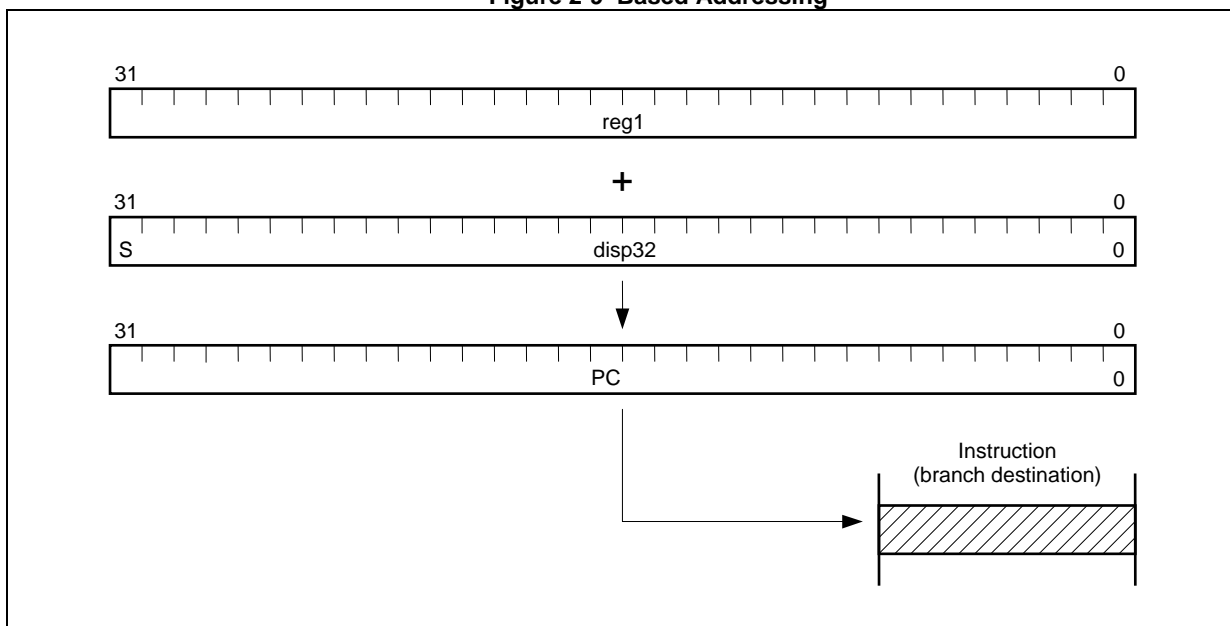
**(4)  Other addressing**

A value specified by an instruction is transferred to the program counter (PC). How a value is specified is explained in [Operation] or [Description] of each instruction.

The CALLT, SYSCALL, TRAP, FETRAP, and RIE instructions, and branch in case of an exception are used with this type of addressing.

### 2.7.3  Data Addressing

The following methods can be used to access the target registers or memory when executing an instruction.

#### (1)  Register addressing

This addressing method accesses the general-purpose register or system register specified in the general-purpose register field as an operand.

Any instruction that includes the operand reg1, reg2, reg3, or regID is used with this type of addressing.

#### (2)  Immediate addressing

This address mode uses arbitrary size data as the operation target in the instruction code.

Any instruction that includes the operand imm5, imm16, vector, or cccc is used with this type of addressing.

> **Remark**   vector:   This is immediate data that specifies the exception vector (00H to 1FH), and is an operand
> used by the TRAP, FETRAP, and SYSCALL instructions. The data width differs from one
> instruction to another.
>
> cccc:     This is 4-bit data that specifies a condition code, and is an operand used in the CMOV
> instruction, SASF instruction, and SETF instruction. One bit (0) is added to the higher position
> and is then assigned to an opcode as a 5-bit immediate data.

#### (3)  Based addressing

There are two types of based addressing, as described below.

#### (a)  Type 1

The contents of the general-purpose register (reg1) specified at the addressing specification field in the instruction code are added to the N-bit displacement (dispN) data sign-extended to word length to obtain the operand address, and addressing accesses the target memory for the operation. At this time, the displacement is handled as a 2's complement data, and the MSB is a signed bit (S). If the displacement is less than 32 bits, the higher bits are sign-extended (N differs from one instruction to another).

The LD, ST, and CAXI instructions are used with this type of addressing.

**Figure 2-10  Based Addressing (Type 1)**



> **Remark**   This is an example of 16-bit displacement.
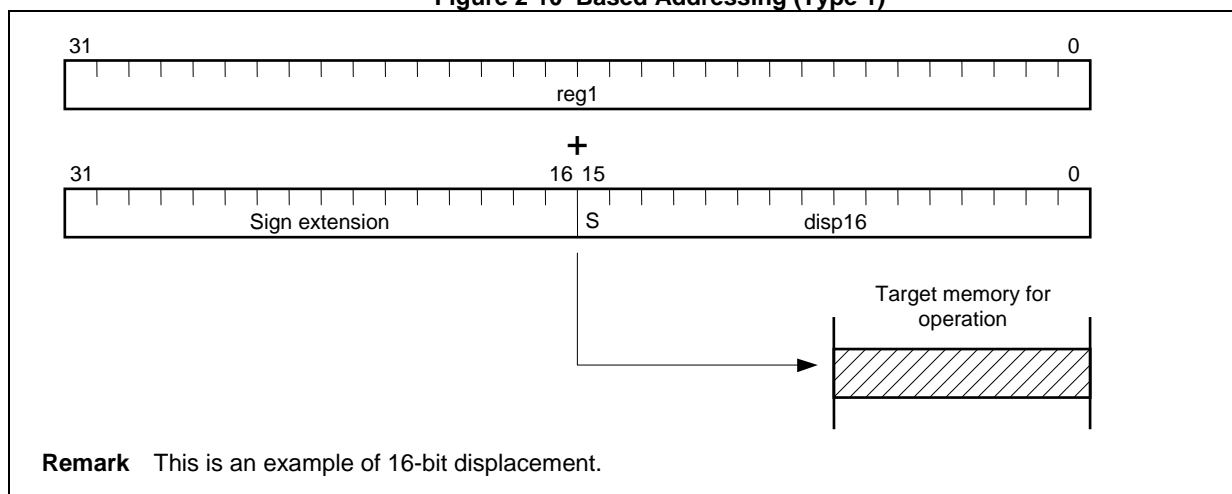
**(b)  Type 2**

This addressing accesses a memory to be manipulated by using as an operand address the sum of the contents of the element pointer (r30) and N-bit displacement data (dispN) that is zero-extended to a word length. If the displacement is less than 32 bits, the higher bits are sign-extended (N differs from one instruction to another).

The SLD instruction and SST instruction are used with this type of addressing.

**Figure 2-11  Based Addressing (Type 2)**



   Remark   This is an example of 8-bit displacement.
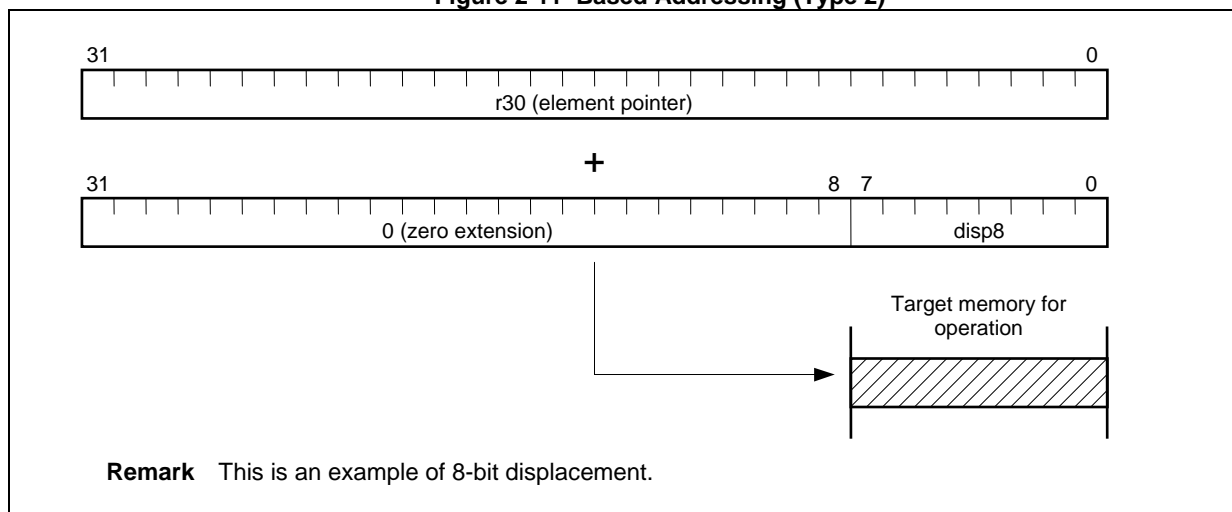
**(4)  Bit addressing**

The contents of the general-purpose register (reg1) are added to the N-bit displacement (dispN) data sign-extended to word length to obtain the operand address, and bit addressing accesses one bit (as specified by 3-bit data "bit #3") in one byte of the target memory space. At this time, the displacement is handled as a 2's complement data, and the MSB is a signed bit (S). If the displacement is less than 32 bits, the higher bits are sign-extended (N differs from one instruction to another).

The CLR1, SET1, NOT1, and TST1 instructions are used with this type of addressing.

**Figure 2-12  Bit Addressing**



   Remark   n: Bit position specified by 3-bit data (bit #3) (n = 0 to 7)

          This is an example of 16-bit displacement.
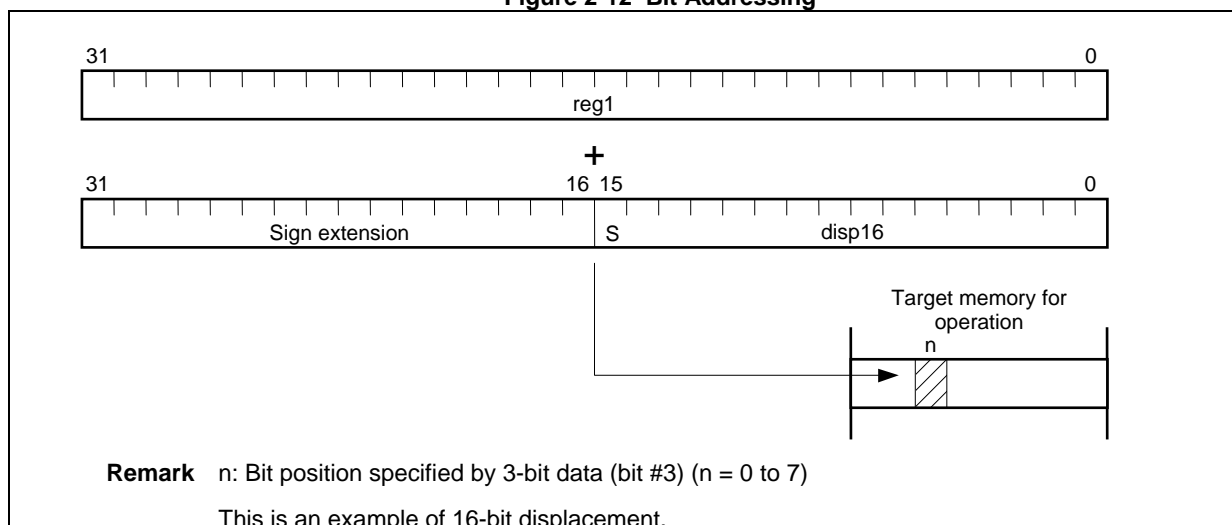
**(5)  Post index increment/decrement addressing**

The contents of the general-purpose register (reg1) are used as an operand address to access the target memory, and then the general-purpose register (reg1) is updated. The register is updated by either incrementing or decrementing it, and there are three types (1 to 3).

If the result of incrementing the general-purpose register (reg1) value exceeds the positive maximum value 0xFFFFFFFF, the result wraps around to 0x00000000, and, if the result of decrementing the general-purpose register value is less than the positive minimum value 0x00000000, the result wraps around to 0xFFFFFFFF.

**(a)  Type 1**

The general-purpose register (reg1) is updated by adding a constant that depends on the type of accessed data (the size of the accessed data) to the contents of the general-purpose register (reg1). If the type of accessed data is a byte, 1 is added, if the type is a halfword, 2 is added, if the type is a word, 4 is added, and if the type is a double-word, 8 is added.

**Figure 2-13  Post Index Increment/Decrement Addressing (Type 1)**
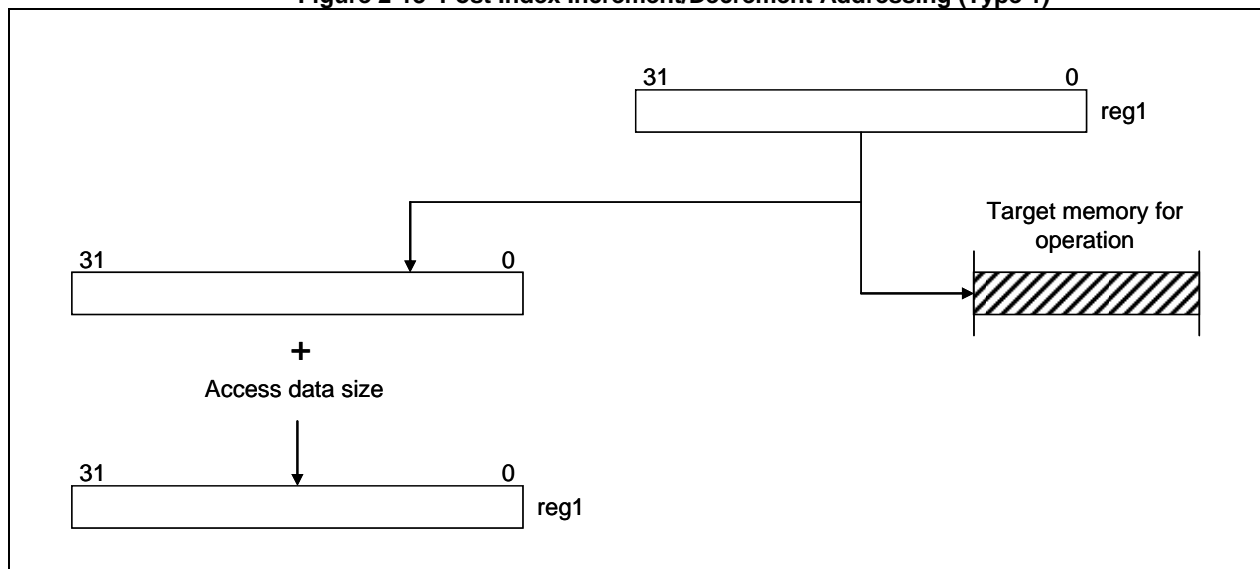
**(b)  Type 2**

The general-purpose register (reg1) is updated by subtracting a constant that depends on the size of the accessed data from the contents of the general-purpose register (reg1). If the size of accessed data is a byte, 1 is subtracted, if the size is a halfword, 2 is subtracted, if the size is a word, 4 is subtracted, and if the size is a double-word, 8 is subtracted.

**Figure 2-14  Post Index Increment/Decrement Addressing (Type 2)**
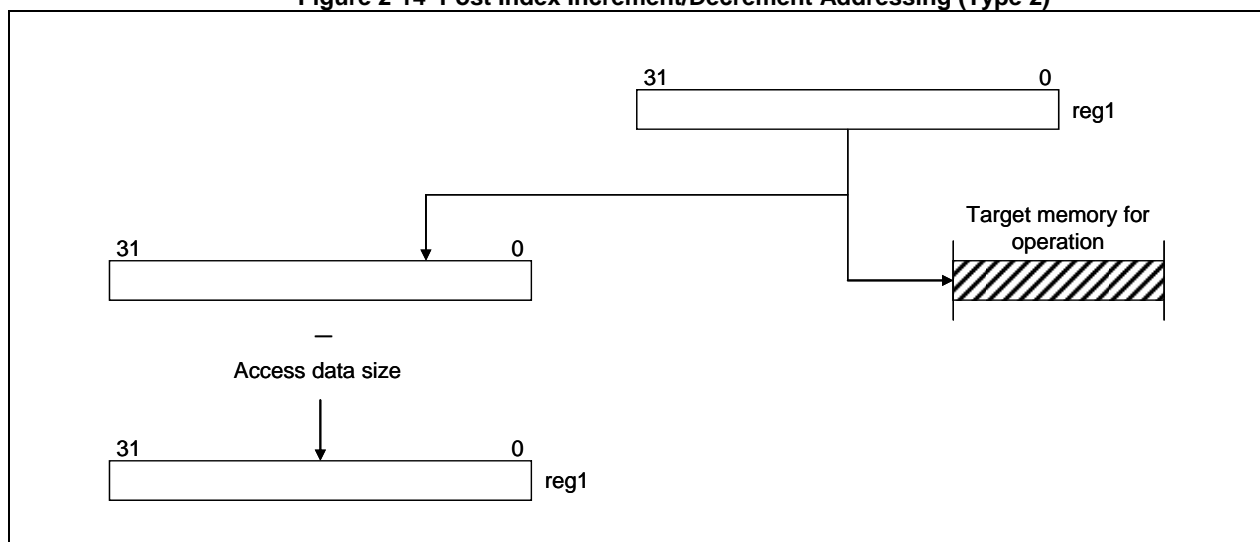


**(c)  Type 3**

The general-purpose register (reg1) is updated by adding the contents of another general-purpose register (reg2) to it. If the MSB of the general-purpose register (reg2) is 1, a negative value is indicated, so a post decrement operation is performed. If this MSB is 0, a positive value is indicated, so a post increment operation is performed. The value of the general-purpose register (reg2) does not change.

**Figure 2-15  Post Index Increment/Decrement Addressing (Type 3)**
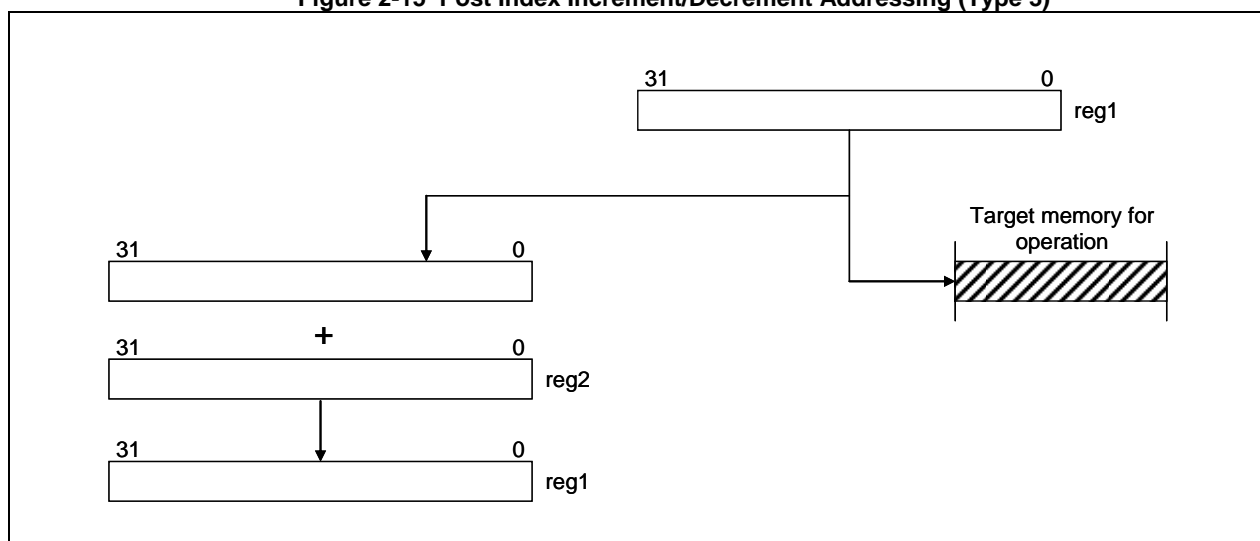
**(6)  Other addressing**

This addressing is to access a memory to be manipulated by using a value specified by an instruction as the operand address. How a value is specified is explained in [Operation] or [Description] of each instruction.

The SWITCH, CALLT, SYSCALL, PREPARE, DISPOSE, PUSHSP, and POPSP instructions are used with this type of addressing.

## 2.8   Acquiring the CPU Number

This CPU provides a method for identifying CPUs in a multi-processor system.

In the multi-processor configuration, you can identify which CPU core is running a program by referencing HTCFG0.PEID.

With HTCFG0.PEID, unique numbers are assigned within multi-processor systems.

## 2.9   System Protection Identifier

In this CPU, memory resources and peripheral devices are managed by system protection groups. By specifying the group to which the program being executed belongs, you can assign operable memory resources and peripheral devices to each machine.

The program being executed belongs to the group shown by MCFG0.SPID, and whether the memory resources and peripheral devices are operable is decided using this SPID. Any value can be set to MCFG0.SPID by the supervisor.

| Caution | According to the value of MCFG0.SPID, how operations are assigned to memory resources and peripheral devices is determined by the hardware specifications. |
| --- | --- |

# CHAPTER 3  REGISTER SET

This chapter describes the program register and system register mounted on this CPU.

## 3.1   Program Registers

Program registers includes general-purpose registers (r0 to r31) and the program counter (PC). r0 always retains 0, whereas the value after reset is undefined in r1 to r31.

**Table 3-1  Program Registers**

| Program Register | Name | Function | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| General-purpose registers | r0 | Zero register | Always retains 0 |
| | r1 | Assembler reserved register | Used as working register for generating addresses |
| | r2 | Register for address and data variables (used when the real-time OS used does not use this register) | |
| | r3 | Stack pointer (SP) | Used for generating a stack frame when a function is called |
| | r4 | Global pointer (GP) | Used for accessing a global variable in the data area |
| | r5 | Text pointer (TP) | Used as a register that indicates the start of the text area (area where program code is placed) |
| | r6 to r29 | Register for addresses and data variables | |
| | r30 | Element pointer (EP) | Used as a base pointer for generating addresses when accessing memory |
| | r31 | Link pointer (LP) | Used when the compiler calls a function |
| Program counter | PC | Retains instruction addresses during execution of programs | |

**Remark**   For further descriptions of r1, r3 to r5, and r31 used for an assembler and/or C compiler, see the manual of each software development environment.

### 3.1.1  General-Purpose Registers

A total of 32 general-purpose registers (r0 to r31) are provided. All of these registers can be used for either data variables or address variables.

Of the general-purpose registers, r0 to r5, r30, and r31 are assumed to be used for special purposes in software development environments, so it is necessary to note the following when using them.

**(a)  r0, r3, and r30**

These registers are implicitly used by instructions.

r0 is a register that always retains 0. It is used for operations that use 0, addressing with base address being 0, etc.

r3 is implicitly used by the PREPARE, DISPOSE, PUSHSP, and POPSP instructions.

r30 is used as a base pointer when the SLD instruction or SST instruction accesses memory.

**(b)  r1, r4, r5, and r31**

These registers are implicitly used by the assembler and C compiler.

When using these registers, register contents must first be saved so they are not lost and can be restored after the registers are used.

**(c)  r2**

This register is used by a real-time OS in some cases. If the real-time OS that is being used is not using r2, r2 can be used as a register for address variables or data variables.

### 3.1.2  PC — Program Counter

The PC retains the address of the instruction being executed.

```
        31                                                              0
                                                                          Value after reset
PC      |              PC31 to PC0                    |                   Note
```
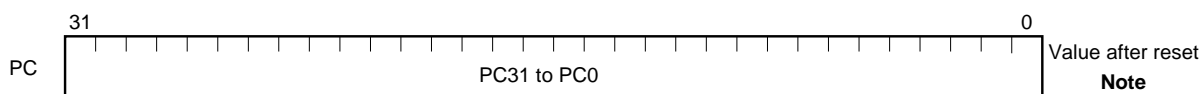
**Table 3-2  PC Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 1 | PC31 to PC1 | These bits indicate the address of the instruction being executed. | R/W | **Note** |
| 0 | PC0 | This bit is fixed to 0. Branching to an odd number address is disabled. | R/W | 0 |

**Note**   For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

## 3.2   Basic System Registers

The basic system registers are used to control CPU status and to retain exception information.

Basic system registers are read from or written to by using the LDSR and STSR instructions and specifying the system register number, which is made up of a register number and selection ID.

**Table 3-3  Basic System Registers (1/2)**

| Register No. (regID, selID) | Symbol | Function | Access Permission |
|---|---|---|---|
| SR0, 0 | EIPC | Status save registers when acknowledging EI level exception | SV |
| SR1, 0 | EIPSW | Status save registers when acknowledging EI level exception | SV |
| SR2, 0 | FEPC | Status save registers when acknowledging FE level exception | SV |
| SR3, 0 | FEPSW | Status save registers when acknowledging FE level exception | SV |
| SR5, 0 | PSW | Program status word | **Note 1** |
| SR13, 0 | EIIC | EI level exception cause | SV |
| SR14, 0 | FEIC | FE level exception cause | SV |
| SR16, 0 | CTPC | CALLT execution status save register | UM |
| SR17, 0 | CTPSW | CALLT execution status save register | UM |
| SR20, 0 | CTBP | CALLT base pointer | UM |
| SR28, 0 | EIWR | EI level exception working register | SV |
| SR29, 0 | FEWR | FE level exception working register | SV |
| SR31, 0 | (BSEL) | (Reserved for backward compatibility with V850E2 series)**Note 2** | SV |

**Notes  1.** The access permission differs depending on the bit. For details, see **(5) PSW — Program status word** in **3.2.1 Basic Registers**.

　　　　**2.** This bit is reserved to maintain backward compatibility with V850E2 series. This bit is always 0 when read. Writing to this bit is ignored.

**Table 3-3  Basic System Registers (2/2)**

| Register No.<br>(regID, selID) | Symbol | Function | Access Permission |
|---|---|---|---|
| SR0, 1 | MCFG0 | Machine configuration | SV |
| SR2, 1 | RBASE | Reset vector base address | SV |
| SR3, 1 | EBASE | Exception handler vector address | SV |
| SR4, 1 | INTBP | Base address of the interrupt handler table | SV |
| SR5, 1 | MCTL | CPU control | SV |
| SR6, 1 | PID | Processor ID | SV |
| SR11, 1 | SCCFG | SYSCALL operation setting | SV |
| SR12, 1 | SCBP | SYSCALL base pointer | SV |
| SR0, 2 | HTCFG0 | Thread configuration | SV |
| SR6, 2 | MEA | Memory error address | SV |
| SR7, 2 | ASID | Address space ID | SV |
| SR8, 2 | MEI | Memory error information | SV |

**(1) EIPC — Status save register when acknowledging EI level exception**

When an EI level exception is acknowledged, the address of the instruction that was being executed when the EI level exception occurred, or of the next instruction, is saved to the EIPC register (see **4.1.3  Exception Types**).

Because there is only one pair of EI level exception status save registers, when processing multiple exceptions, the contents of these registers must be saved by a program.

Be sure to set an even-numbered address to the EIPC register. An odd-numbered address must not be specified.

| 31 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
EIPC         EIPC31 to EIPC0         Value after reset   Undefined
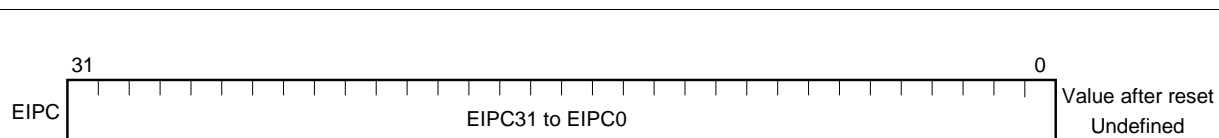
**Table 3-4  EIPC Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 1 | EIPC31 to EIPC1 | These bits indicate the PC saved when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | Undefined |
| 0 | EIPC0 | This bit indicates the PC saved when an EI level exception is acknowledged.<br><br>Always set this bit to 0. Even if it is set to 1, the value transferred to the PC when the EIRET instruction is executed is 0. | R/W | Undefined |

**(2)  EIPSW — Status save register when acknowledging EI level exception**

When an EI level exception is acknowledged, the current PSW setting is saved to the EIPSW register.

Because there is only one pair of EI level exception status save registers, when processing multiple exceptions, the contents of these registers must be saved by a program.

> **Caution   Bits 11 to 9 are related to the debug function and therefore cannot normally be changed.**

| | 31 30 29 | | | | | | | | | | | | | 19 18 17 16 | 15 14 | | 12 11 10 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| EIPSW | 0 | U M | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | CU2 to CU0 | E B V | 0 0 0 | Debug | 0 | N P | E P | I D | S A T | C Y | O V | S | Z | 00000020H |
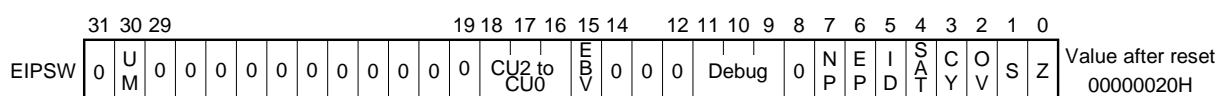
**Table 3-5  EIPSW Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 30 | UM | This bit stores the PSW.UM bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 29 to 19 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 18 to 16 | CU2 to CU0 | These bits store the PSW.CU2-0 field setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R/W | 0 |
| 15 | EBV | This bit stores the PSW.EBV bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 14 to 12 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 11 to 9 | Debug | These bits store the PSW.Debug field setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 8 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 7 | NP | This bit stores the PSW.NP bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 6 | EP | This bit stores the PSW.EP bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 5 | ID | This bit stores the PSW.ID bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 1 |
| 4 | SAT | This bit stores the PSW.SAT bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 3 | CY | This bit stores the PSW.CY bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 2 | OV | This bit stores the PSW.OV bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 1 | S | This bit stores the PSW.S bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 0 | Z | This bit stores the PSW.Z bit setting when an EI level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |

**(3) FEPC — Status save register when acknowledging FE level exception**

When an FE level exception is acknowledged, the address of the instruction that was being executed when the FE level exception occurred, or of the next instruction, is saved to the FEPC register (see **4.1.3  Exception Types**). Because there is only one pair of FE level exception status save registers, when processing multiple exceptions, the contents of these registers must be saved by a program.

Be sure to set an even-numbered address to the FEPC register. An odd-numbered address must not be specified.

| | 31 | | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FEPC | | FEPC31 to FEPC0 | | Undefined |
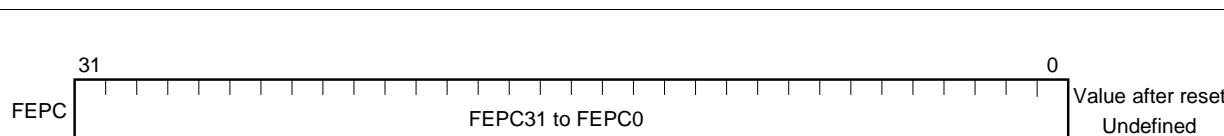
**Table 3-6  FEPC Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 1 | FEPC31 to FEPC1 | These bits indicate the PC saved when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | Undefined |
| 0 | FEPC0 | This bit indicates the PC saved when an FE level exception is acknowledged.<br>Always set this bit to 0. Even if it is set to 1, the value transferred to the PC when the FERET instruction is executed is 0. | R/W | Undefined |

**(4) FEPSW — Status save register when acknowledging FE level exception**

When an FE level exception is acknowledged, the current PSW setting is saved to the FEPSW register.

Because there is only one pair of FE level exception status save registers, when processing multiple exceptions, the contents of these registers must be saved by a program.

> **Caution   Bits 11 to 9 are related to the debug function and therefore cannot normally be changed.**

| | 31 30 29 | 19 18 17 16 | 15 14 | 12 11 10 9 | 8 | 7 6 5 4 | 3 2 1 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| FEPSW | 0 UM 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | CU2 to CU0 | EBV 0 0 | 0 Debug | 0 | NP EP ID SAT | CY OV S Z | 00000020H |
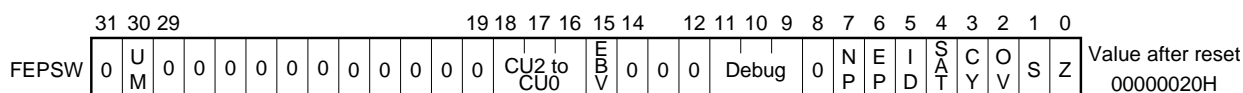
**Table 3-7  FEPSW Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 30 | UM | This bit stores the PSW.UM bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 29 to 19 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 18 to 16 | CU2 to CU0 | These bits store the PSW.CU2-0 field setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R/W | 0 |
| 15 | EBV | This bit stores the PSW.EBV bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 14 to 12 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 11 to 9 | Debug | These bits store the PSW.Debug field setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 8 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 7 | NP | This bit stores the PSW.NP bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 6 | EP | This bit stores the PSW.EP bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 5 | ID | This bit stores the PSW.ID bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 1 |
| 4 | SAT | This bit stores the PSW.SAT bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 3 | CY | This bit stores the PSW.CY bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 2 | OV | This bit stores the PSW.OV bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 1 | S | This bit stores the PSW.S bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |
| 0 | Z | This bit stores the PSW.Z bit setting when an FE level exception is acknowledged. | R/W | 0 |

**(5)  PSW - Program status word**

PSW (program status word) is a set of flags that indicate the program status (instruction execution result) and bits that indicate the operation status of the CPU (flags are bits in the PSW that are referenced by a condition instruction (Bcond, CMOV, etc.)).

---

**Cautions** 1.  When the LDSR instruction is used to change the contents of bits 7 to 0 in this register, the changed contents become valid from the instruction following the LDSR instruction.

2. The access permission for the PSW register differs depending on the bit. All bits can be read, but some bits can only be written under certain conditions. See **Table 3-8** for the access permission for each bit.

---

**Table 3-8  Access Permission for PSW Register**

| Bit | | Access Permission When Reading | Access Permission When Writing |
|---|---|---|---|
| 30 | UM | UM | SV**Note** |
| 19 | HVC | | Special**Note** |
| 18 to 16 | CU2 to CU0 | | SV**Note** |
| 15 | EBV | | SV**Note** |
| 11 to 9 | Debug | | Special**Note** |
| 7 | NP | | SV**Note** |
| 6 | EP | | SV**Note** |
| 5 | ID | | SV**Note** |
| 4 | SAT | | UM |
| 3 | CY | | UM |
| 2 | OV | | UM |
| 1 | S | | UM |
| 0 | Z | | UM |

**Note**   The access permission for the whole PSW register is UM, so the PIE exception does not occur even if the register is written by using an LDSR instruction when PSW.UM is 1. In this case, writing is ignored.

| | 31 | 30 | 29 | | | | | | | | | | | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PSW | 0 | UM | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | CU2 to CU0 | | | | | EBV | 0 | 0 | 0 | Debug | | | 0 | NP | EP | ID | SAT | CY | OV | S | Z | 00000020H |

**Table 3-9  PSW Register Contents (1/2)**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 30 | UM | This bit indicates that the CPU is in user mode (in UM mode).<br>  0: Supervisor mode<br>  1: User mode | R/W | 0 |
| 29 to 19 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 18 to 16 | CU2 to CU0 | These bits indicate the coprocessor use permissions. When the bit corresponding to the coprocessor is 0, a coprocessor unusable exception occurs if an instruction for the coprocessor is executed or a coprocessor resource (system register) is accessed.<br>  CU2 to CPU0  bits 18 to 16: (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R/W | 000 |
| 15 | EBV | This bit indicates the reset vector and exception vector operation. See the description on RBASE and EBASE in this section. | R/W | 0 |
| 14 to 12 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 11 to 9 | Debug | This bit is used for the debug function for the development tool. Always set this bit to 0. | — | 0 |
| 8 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 7 | NP | This bit disables the acknowledgement of FE level exception. When an FE level exception is acknowledged, this bit is set to 1 to disable the acknowledgement of EI level and FE level exceptions. As for the exceptions which the NP bit disables the acknowledgment, see **Table 4-1 Exception Cause List**.<br>  0: The acknowledgement of FE level exception is enabled.<br>  1: The acknowledgement of FE level exception is disabled. | R/W | 0 |
| 6 | EP | This bit indicates that an exception other than an interrupt is being serviced. It is set to 1 when the corresponding exception occurs. This bit does not affect acknowledging an exception request even when it is set to 1.<br>  0: An interrupt is being serviced.<br>  1: An exception other than an interrupt is being serviced. | R/W | 0 |
| 5 | ID | This bit disables the acknowledgement of EI level exception. When an EI level or FE level exception is acknowledged, this bit is set to 1 to disable the acknowledgement of EI level exception. As for the exceptions which the ID bit disables the acknowledgment, see **Table 4-1 Exception Cause List**. This bit is also used to disable EI level exceptions from being acknowledged as a critical section while an ordinary program or interrupt is being serviced. It is set to 1 when the DI instruction is executed, and cleared to 0 when the EI instruction is executed. The change of the ID bit by the EI or ID instruction will be enabled from the next instruction.<br>  0: The acknowledgement of EI level exception is enabled.<br>  1: The acknowledgement of EI level exception is disabled. | R/W | 1 |

**Table 3-9  PSW Register Contents (2/2)**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 4 | SAT[Note] | This bit indicates that the operation result is saturated because the result of a saturated operation instruction operation has overflowed. This is a cumulative flag, so when the operation result of the saturated operation instruction becomes saturated, this bit is set to 1, but it is not later cleared to 0 when the operation result for a subsequent instruction is not saturated. This bit is cleared to 0 by the LDSR instruction. This bit is neither set to 1 nor cleared to 0 when an arithmetic operation instruction is executed.<br>  0: Not saturated<br>  1: Saturated | R/W | 0 |
| 3 | CY | This bit indicates whether a carry or borrow has occurred in the operation result.<br>  0: Carry and borrow have not occurred.<br>  1: Carry or borrow has occurred. | R/W | 0 |
| 2 | OV[Note] | This bit indicates whether or not an overflow has occurred during an operation.<br>  0: Overflow has not occurred.<br>  1: Overflow has occurred. | R/W | 0 |
| 1 | S[Note] | This bit indicates whether or not the result of an operation is negative.<br>  0: Result of operation is positive or 0.<br>  1: Result of operation is negative. | R/W | 0 |
| 0 | Z | This bit indicates whether or not the result of an operation is 0.<br>  0: Result of operation is not 0.<br>  1: Result of operation is 0. | R/W | 0 |

**Note**  The operation result of the saturation processing is determined in accordance with the contents of the OV flag and S flag during a saturated operation. When only the OV flag is set to 1 during a saturated operation, the SAT flag is set to 1.

| Operation Result Status | Flag Status | | | Operation Result after Saturation Processing |
|-------------------------|-----|-----|-----|---------------------------------------------|
| | SAT | OV | S | |
| Exceeded positive maximum value | 1 | 1 | 0 | 7FFFFFFFH |
| Exceeded negative maximum value | 1 | 1 | 1 | 80000000H |
| Positive (maximum value not exceeded) | Value prior to operation is retained. | 0 | 0 | Operation result itself |
| Negative (maximum value not exceeded) | | | 1 | |

**(6) EIIC — EI level exception cause**

The EIIC register retains the cause of any EI level exception that occurs. The value retained in this register is an exception code corresponding to a specific exception cause (see **Table 4-1  Exception Cause List**).

31                                                                                    0

EIIC

| EIIC31 to EIIC0 |
|---|

Initial value
00000000H
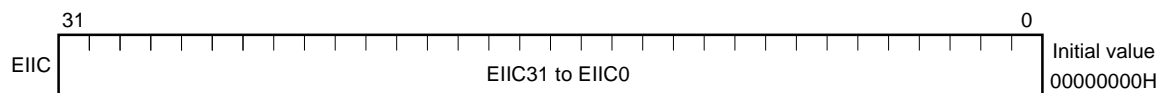
**Table 3-10  EIIC Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 0 | EIIC31 to EIIC0 | These bits store the exception cause code when an EI level exception occurs. The EIIC15-0 field stores the exception cause codes shown in **Table 4-1**. The EIIC31-16 field stores detailed exception cause codes defined individually for each exception. If there is no particular definition, these bits are set to 0. | R/W | 0 |

**(7)  FEIC — FE level exception cause**

The FEIC register retains the cause of any FE level exception that occurs. The value retained in this register is an exception code corresponding to a specific exception cause (see **Table 4-1  Exception Cause List**).

FEIC

| 31 | | 0 | Value after reset |
|----|----|----|----|
| | FEIC31 to FEIC0 | | 00000000H |
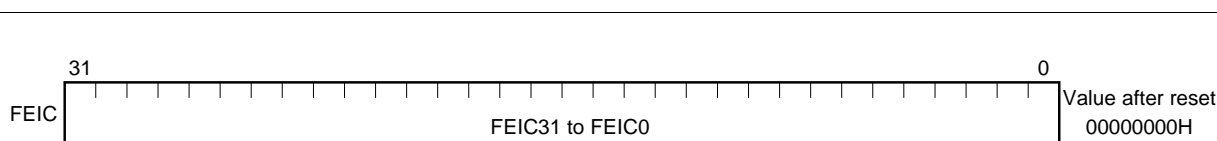
**Table 3-11  FEIC Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 0 | FEIC31 to FEIC0 | These bits store the exception cause code when an FE level exception occurs.<br><br>The FEIC15-0 field stores the exception cause codes shown in **Table 4-1**.<br><br>The FEIC31-16 field stores detailed exception cause codes defined individually for each exception. If there is no particular definition, these bits are set to 0. | R/W | 0 |

**(8)  CTPC — Status save register when executing CALLT**

When a CALLT instruction is executed, the address of the next instruction after the CALLT instruction is saved to CTPC.

Be sure to set an even-numbered address to the CTPC register. An odd-numbered address must not be specified.

|  | 31 | | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CTPC | | CTPC31 to CTPC0 | | Undefined |
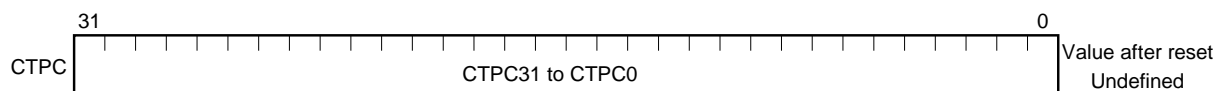
**Table 3-12  CTPC Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 1 | CTPC31 to CTPC1 | These bits indicate the PC of the instruction after the CALLT instruction. | R/W | Undefined |
| 0 | CTPC0 | This bit indicates the PC of the instruction after the CALLT instruction. Always set this bit to 0. Even if it is set to 1, the value transferred to the PC when the CTRET instruction is executed is 0. | R/W | Undefined |

**(9)  CTPSW — Status save register when executing CALLT**

When a CALLT instruction is executed, some of the PSW (program status word) settings are saved to CTPSW.

| | 31 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| CTPSW | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | SAT | CY | OV | S | Z | 00000000H |

**Table 3-13  CTPSW Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 5 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 4 | SAT | This bit stores the PSW.SAT bit setting when the CALLT instruction is executed. | R/W | 0 |
| 3 | CY | This bit stores the PSW.CY bit setting when the CALLT instruction is executed. | R/W | 0 |
| 2 | OV | This bit stores the PSW.OV bit setting when the CALLT instruction is executed. | R/W | 0 |
| 1 | S | This bit stores the PSW.S bit setting when the CALLT instruction is executed. | R/W | 0 |
| 0 | Z | This bit stores the PSW.Z bit setting when the CALLT instruction is executed. | R/W | 0 |

**(10) CTBP — CALLT base pointer**

The CTBP register is used to specify table addresses of the CALLT instruction and generate target addresses.

Be sure to set the CTBP register to a halfword address.

| | 31 | | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CTBP | | CTBP31 to CTBP0 | | Undefined |

**Table 3-14  CTBP Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 1 | CTBP31 to CTBP1 | These bits indicate the base pointer address of the CALLT instruction. These bits indicate the start address of the table used by the CALLT instruction. | R/W | Undefined |
| 0 | CTBP0 | This bit indicates the base pointer address of the CALLT instruction. These bits indicate the start address of the table used by the CALLT instruction. Always set this bit to 0. | R | 0 |

**(11) ASID — Address space ID**

This is the address space ID. This is used to identify the address space provided by the memory management function.
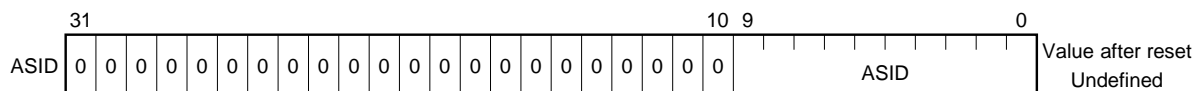


**Table 3-15  ASID Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 10 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 9 to 0 | ASID | This is the address space ID. | R/W | Undefined |

**(12) EIWR — EI level exception working register**

The EIWR register is used as a working register when an EI level exception has occurred.

```
       31                                                                    0
EIWR  ┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐   Value after reset
      │                        EIWR31 to EIWR0                            │   Undefined
      └──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

**Table 3-16  EIWR Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 0 | EIWR31 to EIWR0 | These bits constitute a working register that can be used for any purpose during the processing of an EI level exception. Use this register for purposes such as storing the values of general-purpose registers. | R/W | Undefined |

**(13) FEWR — FE level exception working register**

The FEWR register is used as a working register when an FE level exception has occurred.

```
         31                                                                    0
         ┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐      Value after reset
FEWR     │                     FEWR31 to FEWR0                              │          Undefined
         └─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

**Table 3-17  FEWR Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 0 | FEWR31 to FEWR0 | These bits constitute a working register that can be used for any purpose during the processing of an FE level exception. Use this register for purposes such as storing the values of general-purpose registers. | R/W | Undefined |

**(14) HTCFG0 — Thread configuration register**
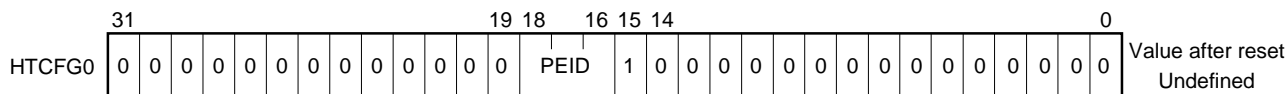


**Table 3-18  HTCFG0 Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 19 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 18 to 16 | PEID | These bits indicate the processor element number. | R | **Note 1** |
| 15 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 1 |
| 14 to 0 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |

**Note   1.** When these bits are read, the CPU processor identifier defined in the product specifications is read. These bits cannot be written. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

**(15) MEA — Memory error address register**

```
            31                                                    0
MEA    ┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────┐    Value after reset
       │                      MEA                          │    Undefined
       └──────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
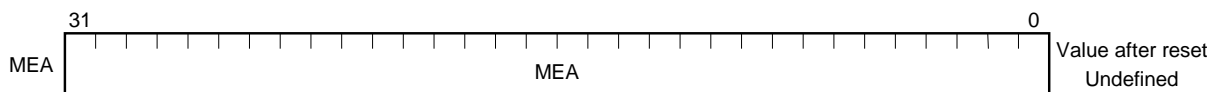
**Table 3-19  MEA Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 0 | MEA | These bits store the violation address when an MAE (misaligned) or MPU occurs. | R/W | Undefined |

### (16) MEI — Memory error information register

This register is used to store information about the instruction that caused the exception when a misaligned (MAE) or memory protection (MDP) exception occurs.
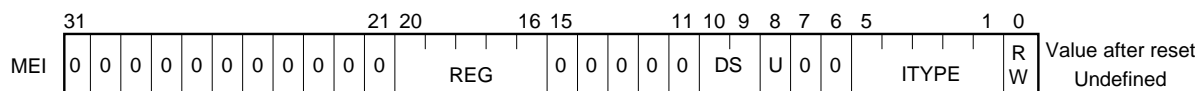


**Table 3-20  MEI Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 21 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 20 to 16 | REG | These bits indicate the number of the source or destination register accessed by the instruction that caused the exception. For details, see **Table 3-21**. | R/W | Undefined |
| 15 to 11 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 10, 9 | DS | These bits indicate the type of data handled by the instruction that caused the exception.**Note** <br> 0: Byte (8 bits) <br> 1: Halfword (16 bits) <br> 2: Word (32 bits) <br> 3: Double-word (64 bits) <br> For details, see **Table 3-21**. | R/W | Undefined |
| 8 | U | This bit indicates the sign extension method of the instruction that caused the exception. <br> 0: Signed <br> 1: Unsigned <br> For details, see **Table 3-21**. | R/W | Undefined |
| 7, 6 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 5 to 1 | ITYPE | These bits indicate the instruction that caused the exception. <br> For details, see **Table 3-21**. | R/W | Undefined |
| 0 | RW | This bit indicates whether the operation of the instruction that caused the exception was read (Load-memory) or write (Store-memory). <br> 0: Read (Load-memory) <br> 1: Write (Store-memory) <br> For details, see **Table 3-21**. | R/W | Undefined |

**Note**  Even if the data is divided and access is made several times due to the specifications of the hardware, the original data type indicated by the instruction is stored.

**Table 3-21  Instructions Causing Exceptions and Values of MEI Register**

| Instruction | REG | DS | U | RW | ITYPE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SLD.B | dst | 0 (Byte) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00000b |
| SLD.BU | dst | 0 (Byte) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 00000b |
| SLD.H | dst | 1 (Half-word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00000b |
| SLD.HU | dst | 1 (Half-word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 00000b |
| SLD.W | dst | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00000b |
| SST.B | src | 0 (Byte) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00000b |
| SST.H | src | 1 (Half-word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00000b |
| SST.W | src | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00000b |
| LD.B (disp16) | dst | 0 (Byte) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00001b |
| LD.BU (disp16) | dst | 0 (Byte) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 00001b |
| LD.H (disp16) | dst | 1 (Half-word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00001b |
| LD.HU (disp16) | dst | 1 (Half-word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 00001b |
| LD.W (disp16) | dst | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00001b |
| ST.B (disp16) | src | 0 (Byte) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00001b |
| ST.H (disp16) | src | 1 (Half-word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00001b |
| ST.W (disp16) | src | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00001b |
| LD.B (disp23) | dst | 0 (Byte) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00010b |
| LD.BU (disp23) | dst | 0 (Byte) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 00010b |
| LD.H (disp23) | dst | 1 (Half-word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00010b |
| LD.HU (disp23) | dst | 1 (Half-word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 00010b |
| LD.W (disp23) | dst | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00010b |
| ST.B (disp23) | src | 0 (Byte) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00010b |
| ST.H (disp23) | src | 1 (Half-word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00010b |
| ST.W (disp23) | src | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00010b |
| LD.DW (disp23) | dst | 3 (Double-word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00010b |
| ST.DW (disp23) | src | 3 (Double-word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00010b |
| LDL.W | dst | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 00111b |
| STC.W | src | 2 (Word) | 0 (Signed) | 1 (Write) | 00111b |
| CAXI | dst | 2 (Word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read)[Note 1] | 01000b |
| SET1 | - | 0 (Byte) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read)[Note 1] | 01001b |
| CLR1 | - | 0 (Byte) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read)[Note 1] | 01001b |
| NOT1 | - | 0 (Byte) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read)[Note 1] | 01001b |
| TST1 | - | 0 (Byte) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 01001b |
| PREPARE | - | 2 (Word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 1 (Write) | 01100b |
| DISPOSE | - | 2 (Word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 01100b |
| PUSHSP | - | 2 (Word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 1 (Write) | 01101b |
| POPSP | - | 2 (Word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 01101b |
| SWITCH | - | 1 (Half-word) | 0 (Signed) | 0 (Read) | 10000b |
| CALLT | - | 1 (Half-word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 10001b |
| SYSCALL | - | 2 (Word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 10010b |
| CACHE [Note 4] | - | - | - | 0/1[Note 2] | 10100b |
| Interrupt (table reference method)[Note 3] | - | 2 (Word) | 1 (Unsigned) | 0 (Read) | 10101b |

**Notes 1.** This exception occurs when the instruction executes a read access.

**2.** The value differs depending on the operation.

**3.** When the interrupt vector of the table reference method is read.

**4.** The product does not have a cache, so the CACHE instruction does not lead to the generation of an exception.

**Remark**   dst: Destination register number, src: Source register number

### (17) RBASE — Reset vector base address

This register indicates the reset vector address when there is a reset. If the PSW.EBV bit is 0, this vector address is also used as the exception vector address.
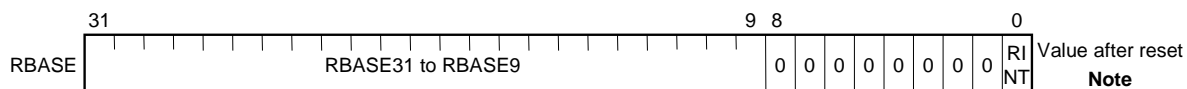


**Table 3-22 RBASE Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 9 | RBASE31 to RBASE9 | These bits indicate the reset vector when there is a reset. When PSW.EBV = 0, this address is also used as the exception vector. The RBASE8-0 bits are not assigned as names because these bits are always 0. | R | **Note** |
| 8 to 1 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 0 | RINT | When the RINT bit is set, the exception handler address for interrupt processing is reduced. See **4.5.1 (1) Direct vector method**. This bit is valid when PSW.EBV = 0. | R | **Note** |

**Note** The value after reset depends on the hardware specifications. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

**(18) EBASE — Exception handler vector address**

This register indicates the exception handler vector address. This register is valid when the PSW.EBV bit is 1.
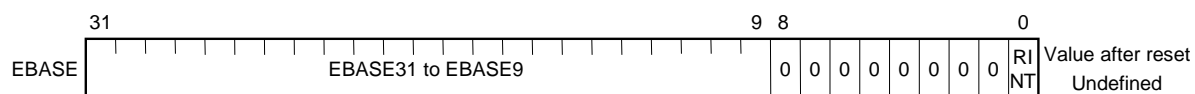


**Table 3-23  EBASE Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 9 | EBASE31 to EBASE9 | The exception handler routine address is changed to the address resulting from adding the offset address of each exception to the base address specified for this register.<br>The EBASE8-0 bits are not assigned as names because these bits are always 0. | R/W | Undefined |
| 8 to 1 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 0 | RINT | When the RINT bit is set, the exception handler address for interrupt processing is reduced. See **4.5.1 (1) Direct vector method**. | R/W | Undefined |

**(19) INTBP — Base address of the interrupt handler table**

This register indicates the base address of the table when the table reference method is selected as the interrupt handler address selection method.

|  | 31 | 9 8 | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| INTBP | INTBP31 to INTBP9 | 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | | Undefined |
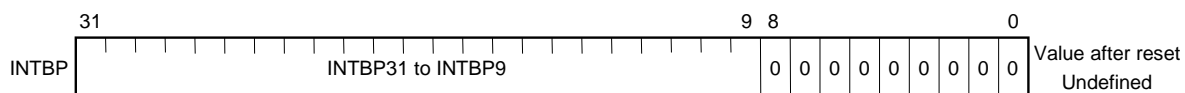
**Table 3-24  INTBP Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 9 | INTBP31 to INTBP9 | These bits indicate the base pointer address for an interrupt when the table reference method is used.<br><br>The value indicated by these bits is the first address in the table used to determine the exception handler when the interrupt specified by the table reference method (EIINT0 to EIINT511) is acknowledged.<br><br>The INTBP8-0 bits are not assigned as names because these bits are always 0. | R/W | Undefined |
| 8 to 0 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |

**(20) PID — Processor ID**

The PID register retains a processor identifier that is unique to the CPU. The PID register is a read-only register.

---

**Cautions** The PID register indicates information used to identify the incorporated CPU core and CPU core configuration. Usage such that the software behavior varies dynamically according to the PID register information is not assumed.

---
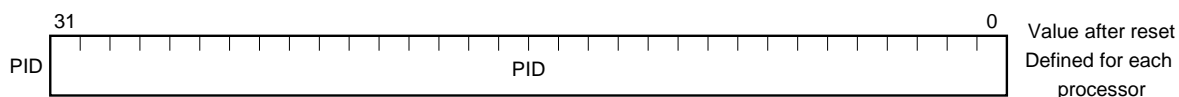


**Table 3-25  PID Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 24 | PID | Architecture Identifier<br>This identifier indicates the architecture of the processor. | R | **Note** |
| 23 to 8 | | Function Identifier<br>This identifier indicates the functions of the processor.<br>These bits indicate whether or not functions defined per bit are implemented (1: implemented, 0: not implemented).<br>    Bits 23 and 11:   Reserved<br>    Bit 10:             Double-precision floating-point operation function<br>    Bit 9:              Single-precision floating-point operation function**Note**<br>    Bit 8:              Memory protection unit (MPU) function<br><br>**Note**    If a double-precision floating-point operation function is implemented (when bit 10 is 1), a single-precision floating-point operation function is also always implemented (bit 9 is 1). | R | **Note** |
| 7 to 0 | | Version Identifier<br>This identifier indicates the version of the processor. | R | **Note** |

Note    For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

**(21) SCCFG — SYSCALL operation setting**

This register is used to set operations related to the SYSCALL instruction. Be sure to set an appropriate value to this register before using the SYSCALL instruction.

| 31 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 8 | 7 | | | | 0 | Value after reset |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| SCCFG | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | SIZE | | | | Undefined |
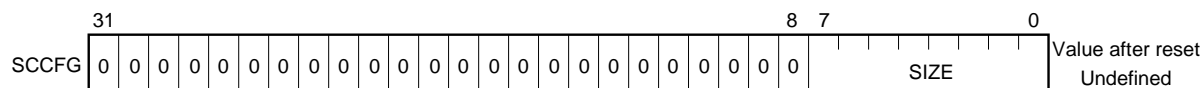
**Table 3-26  SCCFG Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 8 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 7 to 0 | SIZE | These bits specify the maximum number of entries of a table that the SYSCALL instruction references. The maximum number of entries the SYSCALL instruction references is 1 if SIZE is 0, and 256 if SIZE is 255. By setting the maximum number of entries appropriately in accordance with the number of functions branched by the SYSCALL instruction, the memory area can be effectively used. If a vector exceeding the maximum number of entries is specified for the SYSCALL instruction, the first entry is selected. Place an error processing routine at the first entry. | R/W | Undefined |

**(22) SCBP — SYSCALL base pointer**

The SCBP register is used to specify a table address of the SYSCALL instruction and generate a target address.

Be sure to set an appropriate value to this register before using the SYSCALL instruction.

Be sure to set a word address to the SCBP register.

```
        31                                                      0
       ┌────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐   Value after reset
SCBP   │                  SCBP31 to SCBP0                        │   Undefined
       └────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
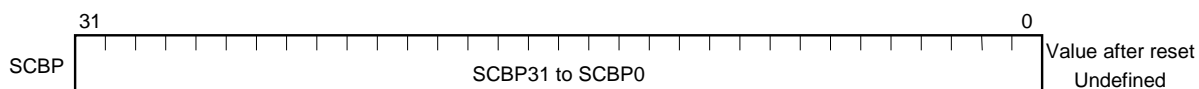
**Table 3-27  SCBP Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 2 | SCBP31 to SCBP2 | These bits indicate the base pointer address of the SYSCALL instruction. These bits indicate the start address of the table used by the SYSCALL instruction. | R/W | Undefined |
| 1, 0 | SCBP1, SCBP0 | These bits indicate the base pointer address of the SYSCALL instruction. These bits indicate the start address of the table used by the SYSCALL instruction. Always set these bits to 0. | R | 0 |

**(23) MCFG0 — Machine configuration**

This register indicates the CPU configuration.
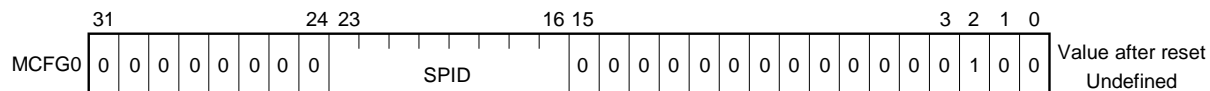


**Table 3-28  MCFG0 Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 24 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 23 to 16 | SPID | These bits indicate the system protection number.<br>The SPID bit width depends on the product and the value that can be written might therefore be restricted.<br>For details, see the hardware manual of the product used. | R/W | **Note** |
| 15 to 3 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 2 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 1.) | R | 1 |
| 1, 0 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |

**Note**    For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

**(24) MCTL — Machine control**

This register is used to control the CPU.



```
        31 30                                             2  1  0
MCTL  | 1| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0|MA|UIC|   Value after reset
                                                                                                  Undefined
```
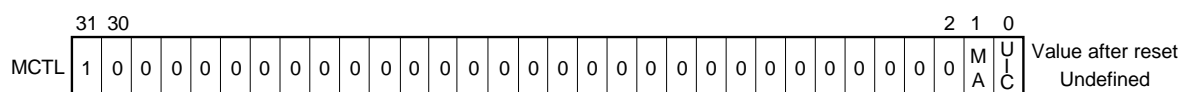
**Table 3-29  MCTL Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 1.) | R | 1 |
| 30 to 2 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 1 | MA | This bit specifies the operation when a misaligned access occurs.<br>0: When a misaligned access occurs, an exception always occurs. [Note 2]<br>1: Hardware operates normally. [Note 3] | R/W[Note 1] | 0[Note 1] |
| 0 | UIC | This bit is used to control the interrupt enable/disable operation in user mode. When this bit is set to 1, executing the EI/DI instruction in user mode become possible. | R/W | 0 |

**Notes** 1. The value after reset and whether each bit can be written depend on the hardware specifications. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

2. Excluding LD.DW and ST.DW instructions executed at an address at a word boundary.

3. The case in which an MAE exception occurs and the case in which access is performed by hardware are normally defined separately by the hardware specifications. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

## 3.3   Interrupt Function Registers

### 3.3.1  Interrupt Function System Registers

Interrupt function system registers are read from or written to by using the LDSR and STSR instructions and specifying the system register number, which is made up of a register number and selection ID.

**Table 3-30  Interrupt Function System Registers**

| Register No. (regID, selID) | Symbol | Function | Access Permission |
|---|---|---|---|
| SR10, 2 | ISPR | Priority of interrupt being serviced | SV |
| SR11, 2 | PMR | Interrupt priority masking | SV |
| SR12, 2 | ICSR | Interrupt control status | SV |
| SR13, 2 | INTCFG | Interrupt function setting | SV |

**(1)  ISPR — Priority of interrupt being serviced**

This register holds the priority of the EIINT$n$ interrupt being serviced. This priority value is then used to perform priority ceiling processing when multiple interrupts are generated.

| 31 | 16 | 15 | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ISPR | 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | | ISP15 to ISP0 | 00000000H |

**Table 3-31  ISPR Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 16 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 15 to 0 | ISP15 to ISP0 | These bits indicate the acknowledgment status of an EIINT$n$ interrupt with a priority[Note 1] that corresponds to the relevant bit position.<br><br>0: An interrupt request for an interrupt whose priority corresponds to the relevant bit position has not been acknowledged.<br><br>1: An interrupt request for an interrupt whose priority corresponds to the relevant position is being serviced by the CPU core.<br><br>The bit positions correspond to the following priority levels.<br><br>| Bit | Priority |<br>| --- | --- |<br>| 0 | Priority 0 (highest) |<br>| 1 | Priority 1 |<br>| ... | ... |<br>| 6 | Priority 6 |<br>| 7 | Priority 7 |<br><br>When an interrupt request (EIINT$n$) is acknowledged, the bit corresponding to the acknowledged interrupt request is automatically set to 1. If PSW.EP is 0 when the EIRET instruction is executed, the bit with the highest priority among the ISP7-0 bits that are set (0 is the highest priority) is cleared to 0[Note 2].<br><br>While a bit in this register is set to 1, lower priority interrupts (EIINT$n$) are masked. Priority level judgment is therefore not performed when the system is determining whether to acknowledge an exception, meaning that exceptions will not be acknowledged. For details, see **4.1.5  Exception Acknowledgment Priority and Pending Conditions**.<br><br>When performing software-based priority control using the PMR register, be sure to clear this register by using the INTCFG.ISPC bit. | R[Note 4] | 0 |

**Notes** 1. For details, see **4.1.5  Exception Acknowledgment Priority and Pending Conditions**.

2. Interrupt acknowledgment and auto-updating of values when the EIRET instruction is executed are disabled by setting (1) the INTCFG.ISPC bit. It is recommended to enable auto-updating of values, so in normal cases, the INTCFG.ISPC bit should be cleared to 0.

3. This is R or R/W, depending on the setting of the INTCFG.ISPC bit. We recommend using this register as a read-only (R) register.

**(2)  PMR — Interrupt priority masking**

This register is used to mask the specified interrupt priority.

```
         31                                                  8  7              0
                                                                                    Value after reset
PMR  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0        PM7 to PM0              00000000H
```
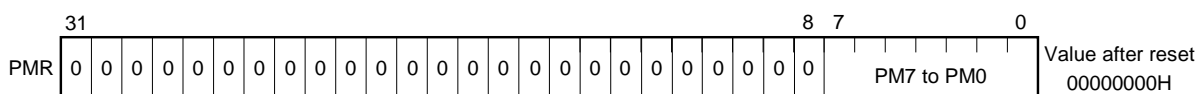
**Table 3-32  PMR Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 16 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 15 to 0 | PM15 to PM0 | These bits mask an interrupt request with a priority level that corresponds to the relevant bit position.<br><br>0: Servicing of an interrupt request with a priority that corresponds to the relevant bit position is enabled.<br><br>1: Servicing of an interrupt request with a priority that corresponds to the relevant bit position is disabled.<br><br>The bit positions correspond to the following priority levels:<br><br><table><tr><td>Bit</td><td>Priority</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Priority 0 (highest)</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Priority 1</td></tr><tr><td>...</td><td>...</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>Priority 6</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>Priority 7 and priority 8 (lowest)</td></tr></table><br>While a bit in this register is set to 1, the corresponding priority interrupt (EIINT$n$) is masked. Priority level judgment is therefore not performed when the system is determining whether to acknowledge an exception, meaning that exceptions will not be acknowledged[Note 1]. | R/W | 0 |

Note 1.   Specify the masks by setting the bits to 1 in order from the lowest-priority bit. For example, F0H can be set, but CCH or 0FH cannot.

**(3)  ICSR — Interrupt control status**

This register indicates the interrupt control status in the CPU.
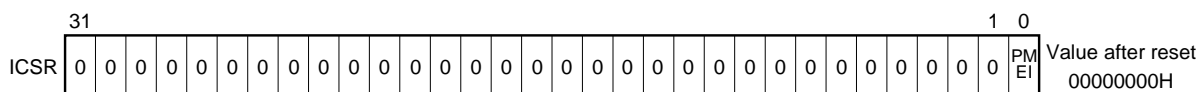


**Table 3-33  ICSR Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 1 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 0 | PMEI | This bit indicates that an interrupt (EIINT$n$) with the priority level masked by the PMR register exists. | R | 0 |

**(4)   INTCFG — Interrupt function setting**

This register is used to specify settings related to the CPU's internal interrupt function.

```
          31                                                              1   0
INTCFG  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0  IS  Value after reset
                                                                     PC
                                                                         00000000H
```
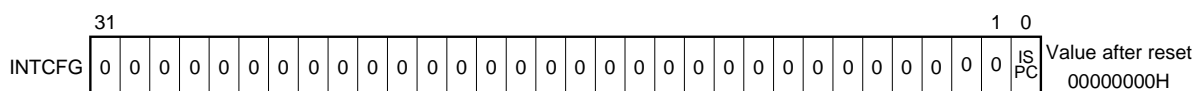
**Table 3-34   INTCFG Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 1 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 0 | ISPC | This bit changes how the ISPR register is written.<br><br>0:  The ISPR register is automatically updated. Updates triggered by the program (via execution of LDSR instruction) are ignored.<br><br>1:  The ISPR register is not automatically updated. Updates triggered by the program (via execution of LDSR instruction) are performed.<br><br>If this bit is cleared to 0, the bits of the ISPR register are automatically set to 1 when an interrupt (EIINT$n$) is acknowledged, and cleared to 0 when the EIRET instruction is executed. In this case, the bits are not updated by an LDSR instruction executed by the program.<br><br>If this bit is set to 1, the bits of the ISPR register are not updated by the acknowledgement of an interrupt (EIINT$n$) or by execution of the EIRET instruction. In this case, the bits can be updated by an LDSR instruction executed by the program.<br><br>In normal cases, the ISPC bit should be cleared. When performing software-based priority control, however, set this bit (1) and perform priority control by using the PMR register. | R/W | 0 |

## 3.4   FPU Function Registers

The product does not have an FPU.

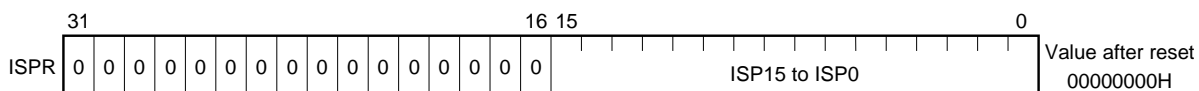## 3.5   MPU Function Registers

### 3.5.1  MPU Function System Registers

MPU function system registers are read from or written to by using the LDSR and STSR instructions and specifying the system register number, which is made up of a register number and selection ID.

**Table 3-35  MPU Function System Registers (1/2)**

| Register No. (regID, selID) | Symbol | Function | Access Permission |
|---|---|---|---|
| SR0, 5 | MPM | Memory protection operation mode setting | SV |
| SR1, 5 | MPRC | MPU region control | SV |
| SR4, 5 | MPBRGN | MPU base region number | SV |
| SR5, 5 | MPTRGN | MPU end region number | SV |
| SR11, 5 | MCR | Memory protection setting check result | SV |
| SR0, 6 | MPLA0 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR1, 6 | MPUA0 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR2, 6 | MPAT0 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR4, 6 | MPLA1 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR5, 6 | MPUA1 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR6, 6 | MPAT1 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR8, 6 | MPLA2 | Lower address of the protection area | SV |
| SR9, 6 | MPUA2 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR10, 6 | MPAT2 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR12, 6 | MPLA3 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR13, 6 | MPUA3 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR14, 6 | MPAT3 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR16, 6 | MPLA4 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR17, 6 | MPUA4 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR18, 6 | MPAT4 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR20, 6 | MPLA5 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR21, 6 | MPUA5 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR22, 6 | MPAT5 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR24, 6 | MPLA6 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR25, 6 | MPUA6 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR26, 6 | MPAT6 | Protection area attribute | SV |

**Table 3-35  MPU Function System Registers (2/2)**

| Register No. (regID, selID) | Symbol | Function | Access Permission |
|---|---|---|---|
| SR28, 6 | MLUA7 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR29, 6 | MPUA7 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR30, 6 | MPAT7 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR0, 7 | MPLA8 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR1, 7 | MPUA8 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR2, 7 | MPAT8 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR4, 7 | MPLA9 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR5, 7 | MPUA9 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR6, 7 | MPAT9 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR8, 7 | MPLA10 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR9, 7 | MPUA10 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR10, 7 | MPAT10 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR12, 7 | MPLA11 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR13, 7 | MPUA11 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR14, 7 | MPAT11 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR16, 7 | MPLA12 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR17, 7 | MPUA12 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR18, 7 | MPAT12 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR20, 7 | MPLA13 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR21, 7 | MPUA13 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR22, 7 | MPAT13 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR24, 7 | MPLA14 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR25, 7 | MPUA14 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR26, 7 | MPAT14 | Protection area attribute | SV |
| SR28, 7 | MPLA15 | Protection area minimum address | SV |
| SR29, 7 | MPUA15 | Protection area maximum address | SV |
| SR30, 7 | MPAT15 | Protection area attribute | SV |

**Note**  The number of incorporated MPLAn, MPUAn, and MPATn (n = 0 to 15) registers depends on the hardware specifications. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

**(1) MPM — Memory protection operation mode**

The memory protection mode register is used to define the basic operating state of the memory protection function.

```
        31                                                11 10 9 8 7          2 1 0
MPM  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 D D D 0 0 0 0 0 0 S M   Value after reset
                                                   X W R             V P   00000000H
                                                                     P E
```

**Table 3-36  MPM Register Contents (1/2)**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 11 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 10 | DX | This bit specifies the default operation when an instruction is executed at an address that does not exist in a protection area.<br>0: Disable executing an instruction at an address that does not exist in a protection area.<br>1: Enable executing an instruction at an address that does not exist in a protection area. | R/W | 0 |
| 9 | DW | This bit specifies the default operation when writing to an address that does not exist in a protection area.<br>0: Disable writing to an address that does not exist in a protection area.<br>1: Enable writing to an address that does not exist in a protection area. | R/W | 0 |
| 8 | DR | This bit specifies the default operation when reading from an address that does not exist in a protection area.<br>0: Disable reading from an address that does not exist in a protection area.<br>1: Enable reading from an address that does not exist in a protection area. | R/W | 0 |
| 7 to 2 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |

**Table 3-36  MPM Register Contents (2/2)**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 1 | SVP<br>**Note 3, 4** | In SV mode (when PSW.UM = 0), this bit is used to specify whether to restrict access according to the SX, SW, and SR bits of the MPAT register for each protection area.**Note 1**<br><br>0: As usual, implicitly enable all access in SV mode.<br><br>1: Restrict access according to the SX, SW, and SR bits even in SV mode.**Note 2** | R/W<br>**Note 4** | 0 |
| 0 | MPE | This bit is used to specify whether to enable or disable MPU function.<br>0: Disable<br>1: Enable | R/W | 0 |

**Notes**  1. When the SVP bit is set to 1, access is restricted according to the setting of each protection area even in SV mode. Therefore, specify protection areas before setting the SVP bit to prevent the access of the program itself from being restricted.

2. If access is restricted in SV mode, execution of MDP exceptions or the MIP exception handling itself might not be possible depending on the settings. Be careful to specify settings so that access to the memory area necessary for the exception handler and exception handling is permitted.

3. Processing the table reference for a SYSCALL instruction or for an EIINT with table reference while the SVP bit is 1 all access is enabled since the CPU is in supervisor mode.

4. The specifications under R/W depend on the product. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

**(2)  MPRC — MPU region control**

Bits used to perform special memory protection function operations are located in this register.

| | 31 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Value after reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MPRC | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | E15 | E14 | E13 | E12 | E11 | E10 | E9 | E8 | E7 | E6 | E5 | E4 | E3 | E2 | E1 | E0 | 00000000H |

**Table 3-37  MPRC Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 16 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 15 to 0 | E15 to E0 | These are the enable bits for each protection area. Bit E$n$ is a copy of bit MPAT$n$.E (where n = 15 to 0). <br><br> For the number of protection areas, see the hardware manual of the product used. | R/W | 0 |

**(3) MPBRGN — MPU base region**

This register indicates the minimum usable MPU area number.
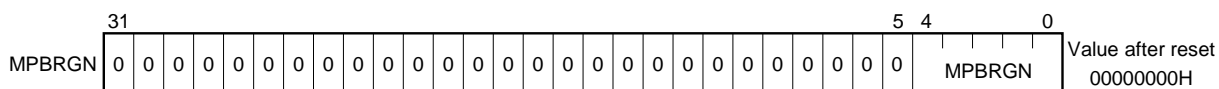


**Table 3-38  MPBRGN Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 5 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 4 to 0 | MPBRGN | These bits indicate the smallest number of an MPU area.<br>These bits always indicate 0. | R | 0 |

**(4) MPTRGN — MPU end region**

This register indicates the maximum usable MPU area number.
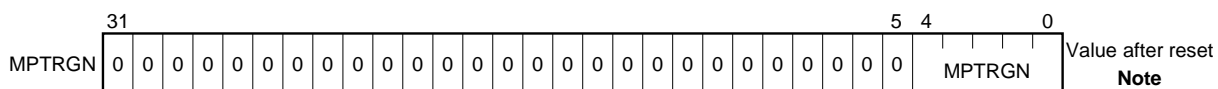


**Table 3-39  MPTRGN Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 5 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 4 to 0 | MPTRGN | These bits indicate the largest number of an MPU area.<br>These bits indicate the maximum number minus 1 of MPU areas incorporated into the hardware. | R | **Note** |

**Note**   For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

**(5)  MCR — Memory protection setting check result**

This CPU does not include the function for the checking of memory protection settings. This register is reserved for future expansion.

| | 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MCR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |

| | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Value after reset 0000003FH |

**Table 3-40  MCR Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 0 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0000003FH |

**(6) MPLAn — Protection area minimum address**

These registers indicate the minimum address of area n (where n = 0 to 15). The number of protection area n depends on the hardware specifications. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

| MPLAn | 31 | MPLAn | 2 1 0 | 0 | 0 | Value after reset Undefined |
|-------|----|-------|-------|---|---|------|
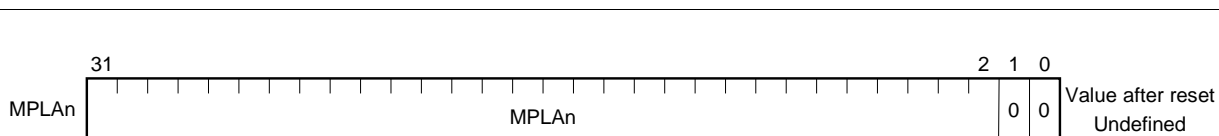
**Table 3-41  MPLAn Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 2 | MPLA31 to MPLA2 | These bits indicate the minimum address of area n. The MPLAn.MPLA1-0 bits are used implicitly set to 0. | R/W | Undefined |
| 1, 0 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |

**(7)  MPUAn — Protection area maximum address**

These registers indicate the maximum address of area n (where n = 0 to 15). The number of protection area n depends on the hardware specifications. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.
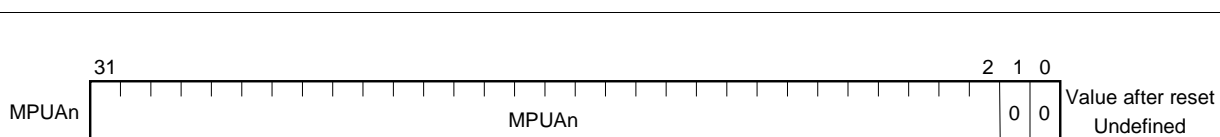


**Table 3-42  MPUAn Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 to 2 | MPUA31 to MPUA2 | These bits indicate the maximum address of area n. The MPUAn.MPUA1-0 bits are used implicitly set to 1. | R/W | Undefined |
| 1, 0 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |

**(8)  MPATn — Protection area attribute**

These registers indicate the attributes of area n (where n = 0 to 15). The number of protection area n depends on the hardware specifications. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.
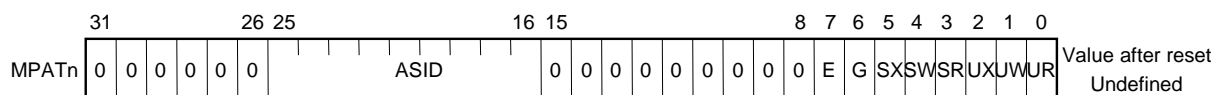


**Table 3-43  MPATn Register Contents**

| Bit | Name | Description | R/W | Value after Reset |
|-----|------|-------------|-----|-------------------|
| 31 to 26 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 25 to 16 | ASID | These bits indicate the ASID value to be used as the area match condition. | R/W | Undefined |
| 15 to 8 | — | (Reserved for future expansion. Be sure to set to 0.) | R | 0 |
| 7 | E | This bit indicates whether area n is enabled or disabled.<br>0: Area n is disabled.<br>1: Area n is enabled. | R/W | 0 |
| 6 | G | 0: ASID match is used as the condition.<br>1: ASID match is not used as the condition.<br>If this bit is 0, MPATn.ASID = ASID.ASID is used as the area match condition.<br>If this bit is 1, the values of MPATn.ASID and ASID.ASID are not used as the area match condition. | R/W | Undefined |
| 5 | SX **Note 2** | This bit indicates the execution privilege for the supervisor mode. **Note 1**<br>0: Execution is disabled.<br>1: Execution is enabled. | R/W **Note 2** | Undefined **Note 2** |
| 4 | SW **Note 2** | This bit indicates the write permission for the supervisor mode. **Note 1**<br>0: Writing is disabled.<br>1: Writing is enabled. | R/W **Note 2** | Undefined **Note 2** |
| 3 | SR **Note 2** | This bit indicates the read permission for the supervisor mode. **Note 1**<br>0: Reading is disabled.<br>1: Reading is enabled. | R/W **Note 2** | Undefined **Note 2** |
| 2 | UX | This bit indicates the execution privilege for the user mode.<br>0: Execution is disabled.<br>1: Execution is enabled. | R/W | Undefined |
| 1 | UW | This bit indicates the write permission for the user mode.<br>0: Writing is disabled.<br>1: Writing is enabled. | R/W | Undefined |
| 0 | UR | This bit indicates the read permission for the user mode.<br>0: Reading is disabled.<br>1: Reading is enabled | R/W | Undefined |

Notes 1.  If access is restricted in SV mode, execution of MDP exceptions or the MIP exception handling itself might not be possible depending on the settings. Be careful to specify settings so that access to the memory area necessary for the exception handler and exception handling is permitted.

2.  The value after a reset and the specifications under R/W depend on the product. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

## 3.6   Cache Operation Function Registers

Since the product does not have a cache, it does not have the registers for cache operations.

## 3.7   Data Buffer Operation Registers

The product does not have the registers for data buffer operations.

# CHAPTER 4  EXCEPTIONS AND INTERRUPTS

An exception is an unusual event that forces a branch operation from the current program to another program, due to certain causes.

A program at the branch destination of each exception is called an "exception handler".

> **Caution**   This CPU handles interrupts as types of exceptions.

## 4.1   Outline of Exceptions

This section describes the elements that assign properties to exceptions, and shows how exceptions work.

### 4.1.1 Exception Cause List

## Table 4-1   Exception Cause List

| Exception | Name | Source | Type[1] | Saved Resource | Return/Restoration | Exception Cause Code[5] | Priority Order[2] — Priority Level | Priority Order[2] — Priority[2] | Acknowledgment Condition (PSW) — ID | Acknowledgment Condition (PSW) — NP | Update (PSW) — UM | Update (PSW) — ID | Update (PSW) — NP | Update (PSW) — EP | Update (PSW) — EBV |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| RESET | Reset | Reset input[3] | Terminating | FE | No | None | 1 | 1 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| FENMI | FENMI interrupt | Interrupt controller[3] | Terminating | FE | No | E0H | 3 | 1 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | s |
| SYSERR | System error | System error input[3] | Terminating | FE | No | 10H-1FH[3] | 3 | 2 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| FEINT | FEINT interrupt | Interrupt controller[3] | Terminating | FE | Yes | F0H | 3 | 3 | x | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | s |
| FPI | FPU exception (imprecise) | Execution of an FPU instruction | Terminating | EI | Return: Yes, Restoration: No | 72H | 4 | Note4 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | s | 1 | s |
| EIINT0-511 | User interrupt | Interrupt controller[3] | Terminating | EI | Yes | 1000H-11FFH[6] | 4 | Note4 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | s | 0 | s |
| MIP | Memory protection exception (execution privilege) | Memory protection violation | Resumable | FE | Yes | 90H | 10 | 1 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| SYSERR | System error | Error input during instruction fetch[3] | Resumable | FE | No | 10H-1FH[3] | 10 | 2 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| RIE | Reserved instruction exception | Execution of a reserved instruction | Resumable | FE | Yes | 60H | 10 | 3 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| UCPOP | Coprocessor unusable exception | Execution of a coprocessor instruction/access permission violation | Resumable | FE | Yes | 80H-82H[9] | 10 | 4 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| PIE | Privilege instruction exception | Execution of a privileged instruction/access permission violation | Resumable | FE | Yes | A0H | 10 | 5 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| MAE | Misalignment exception | Misaligned access occurrence | Resumable | FE | Yes | C0H | 11 | Note7 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| MDP | Memory protection exception (access privilege) | Memory protection violation | Resumable | FE | Yes | 91H | 11 | Note7 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| FPP | FPU exception (precise) | Execution of an FPU instruction | Resumable | EI | Yes | 71H | 11 | Note7 | x | x | 0 | 1 | s | 1 | s |
| SYSCALL | System call | Execution of the SYSCALL instruction | Pending | EI | Yes | 8000H-80FFH | 12 | Note8 | x | x | 0 | 1 | s | 1 | s |
| FETRAP | FE level trap | Execution of the FETRAP instruction | Pending | FE | Yes | 31H-3FH | 12 | Note8 | x | x | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | s |
| TRAP0 | EI level trap 0 | Execution of the TRAP instruction | Pending | EI | Yes | 40H-4FH | 12 | Note8 | x | x | 0 | 1 | s | 1 | s |
| TRAP1 | EI level trap 1 | Execution of the TRAP instruction | Pending | EI | Yes | 50H-5FH | 12 | Note8 | x | x | 0 | 1 | s | 1 | s |

Remark s: Retained, x: Not an acknowledgment condition

Notes 1. For details, see **4.1.3 Types of Exceptions**
2. The acknowledgment priority for exceptions is checked by the priority level, and then priority. A smaller value has a higher priority.
   For details, see **4.1.4 Exception Acknowledgment Conditions and Priority Order.**
3. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.
4. The priorities of EIINT0 to EIINT511 and FPI vary depending on the register setting.
   For details, see **4.1.5 Interrupt Exception Priority and Priority Masking.**
5. The lower 16 bits of the exception cause code are shown. The higher 16 bits of the exception cause code contain the detailed code defined for each exception.
   These bits are 0000H unless otherwise specified in the description of the function.
6. 1000H to 11FFH (channels 0 to 511) are selected according to the channel.
7. This depends on the operation order of instructions.
8. These exceptions occur exclusively because they occur due to instruction execution. There is no priority within the same priority level.
9. 80H to 82H correspond to the coprocessor use permission (CU0 to CU2), respectively.

## 4.1.2  Overview of Exception Causes

The following is an overview of the exception causes handled in this CPU.

### (1)  RESET

These are signals generated when inputting a reset. For details, see **CHAPTER 7  RESET**.

### (2)  FENMI, FEINT, and EIINT

These are interrupt signals that are input from the interrupt controller to activate a certain program. For details about the interrupt functions, see **3.3  Interrupt Function Registers** and the specifications of the interrupt controller incorporated in your product.

### (3)  SYSERR

This is a system error exception. This exception occurs when an error defined by the hardware specifications is detected. An error that occurs at an instruction fetch access is reported as a resumable-type SYSERR exception. Other errors are reported as a terminating-type SYSERR exception.

---

**Caution**   The cause of an SYSERR exception is determined according to the hardware functions. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

### (4)  FPI and FPP

These exceptions do not occur because the product does not have an FPU function.

### (5)  MIP and MDP

These are exceptions that occur when the MPU detects a violation. Detecting an exception is performed when the address at which the instruction will access the memory is calculated. For details, see **5.1  Memory Protection Unit (MPU)**.

### (6)  RIE

This is a reserved instruction exception. This exception occurs when an attempt is made to execute the opcode of an instruction other than an instruction whose operation is defined. The operation is the same as a RIE instruction whose operation is defined. For details, see **6.1.3  Reserved Instructions** and the RIE instruction in **CHAPTER 6 INSTRUCTION**.

### (7)  PIE

This is a privilege instruction exception. This exception occurs when an attempt is made to execute an instruction that does not have the required privilege. For details, see **2.1.3  CPU Operating Modes and Privileges**, **2.2 Instruction Execution**, and **2.5.3 (1) LDSR and STSR**.

### (8)  UCPOP

This is an exception that occurs when an attempt is made to execute a coprocessor instruction when the coprocessor in question is not usable.

**(9)  MAE**

This is an exception that occurs when the result of address calculation is a misaligned address. For details, see

**2.6.3  Data Alignment**.


**(10) TRAP, FETRAP, and SYSCALL**

These are exceptions that occur according to the result of instruction execution. For details, see **CHAPTER 6**

**INSTRUCTION**.

### 4.1.3  Types of Exceptions

This CPU divides exceptions into the following three types according how they are executed.

- Terminating exceptions
- Resumable exceptions
- Pending exceptions

#### (1)  Terminating exceptions

This is an exception acknowledged by interrupting an instruction before its operation is executed. These exceptions include interrupts and imprecise exceptions.

These interrupts do not occur as a result of executing the current instruction and are not related to the instruction. When an interrupt occurs, the PSW.EP bit is cleared to 0, unlike other exceptions. Consequently, termination of the exception handler routine is reported to the external interrupt controller when the return instruction is executed. Be sure to execute an instruction that returns execution from an interrupt while the PSW.EP bit is cleared to 0.

| Caution | The PSW.EP bit is cleared to 0 only when an interrupt (INT0 to INT511, FEINT, or FENMI) is acknowledged. It is set to 1 when any other exception occurs. <br><br> If an instruction to return execution from the exception handler routine that has been started by generation of an interrupt is executed while the PSW.EP bit is set to 1, the resources on the external interrupt controller might not be released, causing malfunctioning. |
|---|---|

If the result of executing the instruction before the interrupted instruction was invalid, there is a delay, and then an imprecise exception occurs. For an imprecise exception, because instructions following the instruction that caused the exception might have already finished executing, resulting in the CPU state at the time of the exception cause not being saved, it is not possible to restore the original processing for re-execution after the processing of this kind of exception.

The return PC of a terminating exception is the PC of the terminated instruction (current PC).

#### (2)  Resumable exceptions

This is an exception acknowledged during the execution of instruction operation before the execution is finished. Because this kind of an exception is correctly acknowledged without executing the next instruction, it is also called a precise exception. General-purpose registers or system registers are not updated because of the occurrence of this exception. The return PC from the exception also points to the instruction where the exception occurred, so execution can be restarted from the state of before the exception occurred.

The return PC of a resumable exception is the PC of the instruction which caused the exception (current PC).

**(3) Pending exceptions**

This is an exception acknowledged after the execution of an instruction finishes as a result of executing the instruction operation. Pending exceptions include software exceptions. Because pending exceptions occur as a result of normal instruction execution, the processing resumes with the instruction following the instruction that caused the pending exceptions when processing control is returned. The original processing can be normally continued after the exception handling.

The return PC of a pending exception is the PC of the next instruction (next PC).

### 4.1.4  Exception Acknowledgment Conditions and Priority Order

The CPU acknowledges only one exception at specific timing based on the exception acknowledgment conditions and priority order. The exception to be acknowledged is determined based on the exception acknowledgment conditions and priority order, as shown in **Figure 4-1** below.

**Figure 4-1  Exception Acknowledgment Conditions and Priority Order**



Note  See **Table 4-1**.
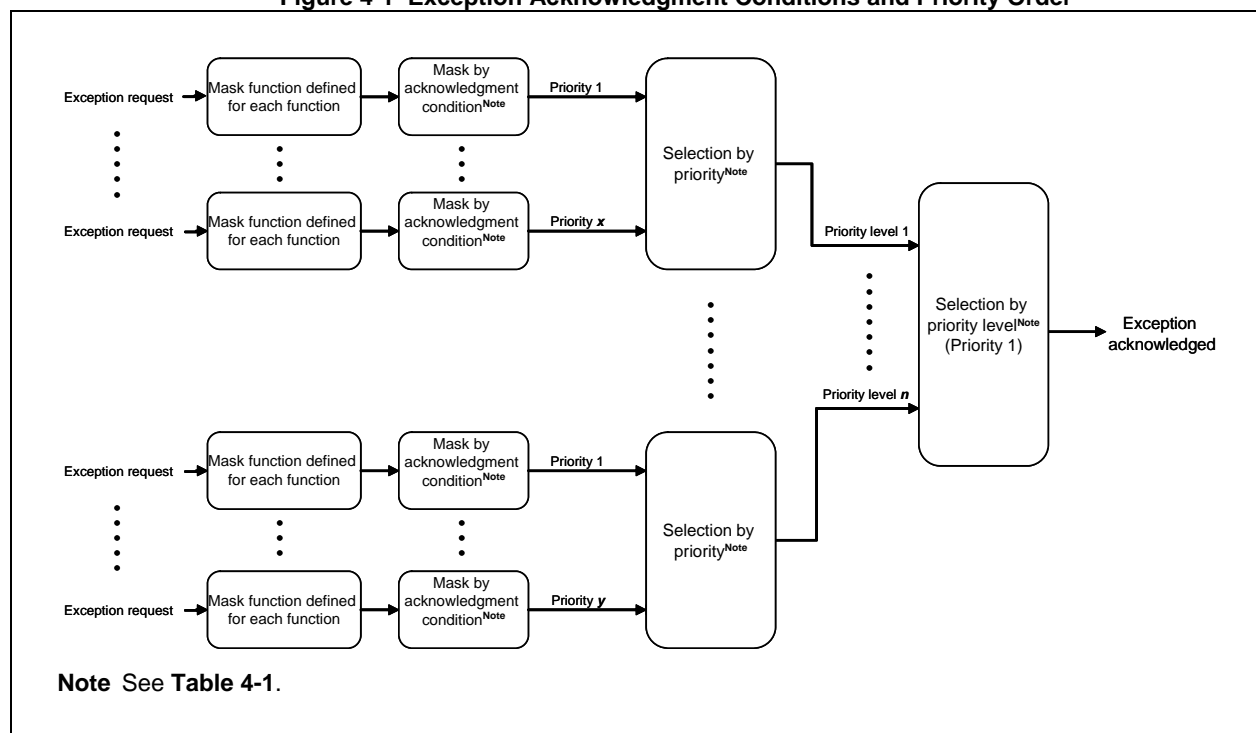
In **Table 4-1**, an exception with "0" in the acknowledgment condition column can be acknowledged when the corresponding bit is "0." For this kind of exception, acknowledgment is held pending when the corresponding bit is "1." When it changes to "0" and the acknowledgment conditions are met, acknowledgment of the exception becomes possible. If no value is specified for a bit, it is not an acknowledgment condition. If multiple bits are specified as conditions, all the conditions must be met simultaneously.

If more than two exceptions satisfy the acknowledgment conditions simultaneously, one exception is selected according to the priority order. The priority order is determined in multiple stages; priority level, and then priority. A smaller number has a higher priority.

When a terminating exception is not acknowledged, it is held pending. If it occurs at the time of a reset, it is not held pending. For details, see **4.2.1  Special Operations**.

For details about acknowledgment conditions, priority level, and priority, see **Table 4-1  Exception Cause List**.

## 4.1.5  Interrupt Exception Priority and Priority Masking

An interrupt (EIINT$n$) can be masked for each exception priority or interrupt priority by setting registers. This function allows the software implementation of an interrupt ceiling with a more flexible software structure and no maintenance.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Caution** | In V850E2 products, the ISPR, PMR, and ICSR registers were defined as functions of the interrupt controller. In this CPU, they are defined as functions of the CPU, but their functions are basically equivalent. Note that there are some differences in functionality. |

**Figure 4-2** shows an overview of the functions of interrupt exception priority and priority masking.

**Figure 4-2  Interrupt Exception Priority and Priority Masking**



Notes  1. For details about the interrupt controller, see the hardware manual of the product used.

2. The source condition for the FPI exception does not arise because the product does not have an FPU function. In addition, the product does not have FPEC and FPIPR registers because these registers are for the FPU. The PMFP bit is also not present in the ICSR register because this bit is for the FPU.

3. The PMEI bit in the ICSR register indicates the generation of EIINT$n$ that is masked by the PMR. Generation of an interrupt that is masked by the ISPR register or another masking function that becomes applicable before masking by the PMR register does not affect the PMEI bit.

**(1)  Interrupt priority**

For an interrupt (EIINT*n*), the exception priority can be changed by setting registers.

**Figure 4-3  Priority Relationship of EIINT*n***

High priority

EIINT*n*  Priority 0

EIINT*n*  Priority 1

EIINT*n*  Priority 2

•
•
•
•
•
•
•

EIINT*n*  Priority 5

EIINT*n*  Priority 6

EIINT*n*  Priority 7
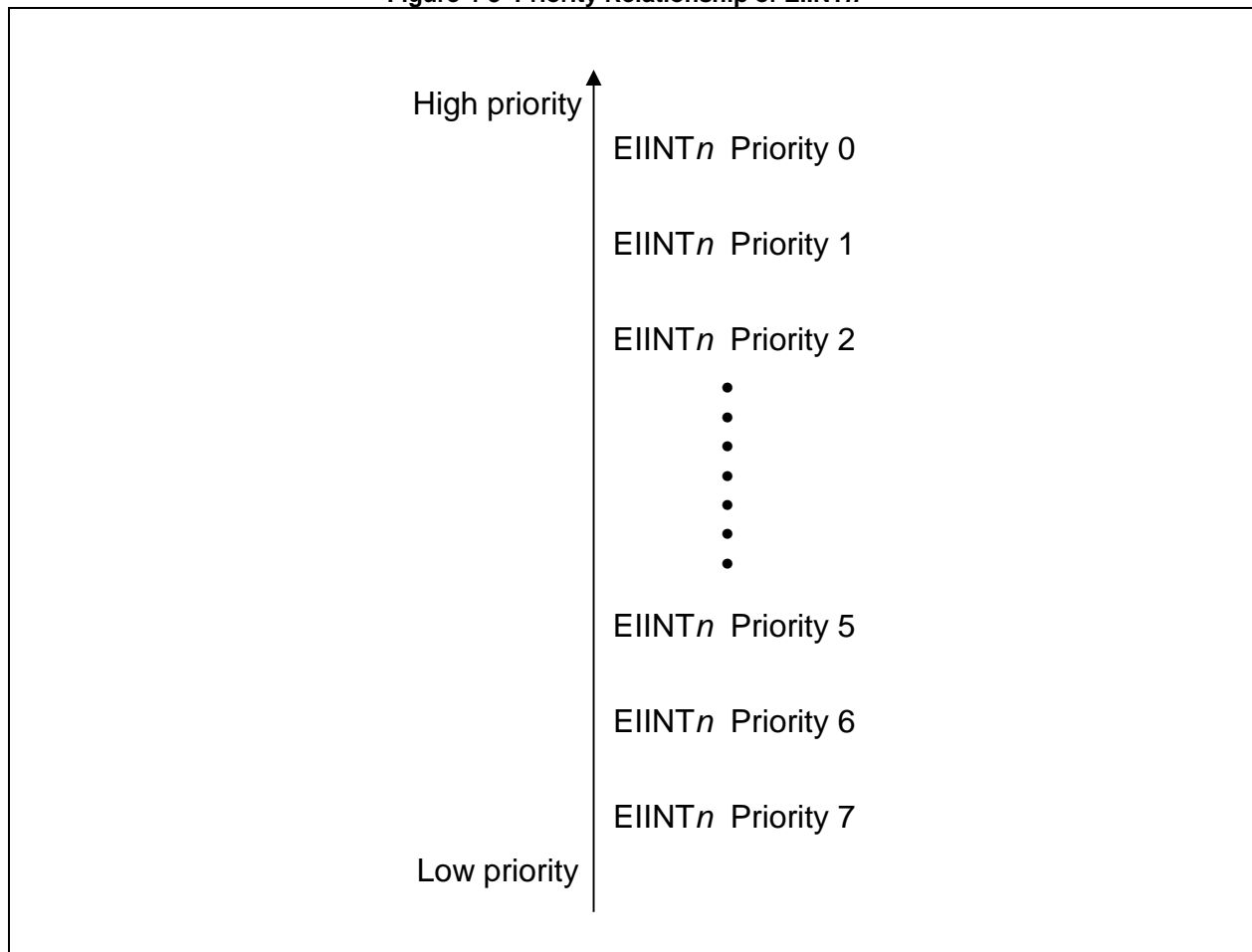
Low priority

**(2)  Interrupt priority mask**

EIINT$n$ might be masked at different priorities by the ISPR register and PMR register. These registers should be used as follows.

For the ISPR register, the bit corresponding to the priority is set (1) when the hardware acknowledges an interrupt, and interrupts with a lower priority are masked. When the EIRET instruction corresponding to the interrupt is executed, the corresponding bit of the ISPR register is cleared (0) to clear the mask.

This automatic interrupt ceiling makes multiplexed interrupt servicing easy without using software control.

The PMR register allows you to mask specific interrupt priorities with software. Use it to raise the level of the interrupt ceiling temporarily in a program. The mask setting specified by the ISPR register and the mask setting of PMR might overlap, and an interrupt is masked if it is masked with one or the other of them. Normally, use the PMR register to raise the ceiling value from the ceiling value of the ISPR register.

The function of the INTCFG register allows you to disable auto update of the ISPR register upon acknowledgment of and return from an interrupt. To perform interrupt ceiling control by using software without using the function of the ISPR register, set (1) the ISPC bit of the INTCFG register, clear the ISPR register, and then control the ceiling value with software by using the PMR register.

Also, when you are using the PMR register, you can check if any interrupt is masked with the PMR register by using the ICSR register.

### 4.1.6  Return and Restoration

When exception handling has been performed, it might affect the original program that was interrupted by the acknowledged exception. This effect is indicated from two perspectives: "Return" and "Restoration".

- Return:       Indicates whether or not the original program can be re-executed from where it was interrupted.
- Restoration:  Indicates whether or not the processor statuses (status of processor resources such as general-purpose registers and system registers) can be restored as they were when the original program was interrupted.

An exception that cannot be returned or restored from ("No" in **Table 4-1**) might cause the return PC to be lost, making it impossible to return from the exception to the original processing by using a return instruction. An exception whose trigger cannot be selected is an unreturnable or unrestorable exception.

For an unrestorable exception, it is possible to return to the original program flow. However, because the state before the occurrence of the exception cannot be restored at that point, care must be taken in continuing subsequent program operation.

### 4.1.7  Context Saving

To save the current program sequence when an exception occurs, appropriately save the following resources according to the function definitions.

- Program counter (PC)
- Program status word (PSW)
- Exception cause code (EIIC, FEIC)
- Work system register (EIWR, FEWR)

The resource to use as the saving destination is determined according to the exception type. Saved resource determination is described below.

**(1)   Context saving**

Exceptions with certain acknowledgment conditions might not be acknowledged at the start of exception handling, based on the pending bits (PSW.ID and NP bits) that are automatically set when another exception is acknowledged.

To enable processing of multiple exceptions of the same level that can be acknowledged again, certain information about the corresponding return registers and exception causes must be saved, such as to a stack. This information that must be saved is called the "context".

In principle, before saving the context, caution is needed to avoid the occurrence of exceptions at the same level. The work system registers that can be used for work to save the context, and the system registers that must be at least saved to enable multiple exception handling are called basic context registers. These basic context registers are provided for each level.

**Table 4-2  Basic Context Registers**

| Exception Level | Basic Context Registers |
|---|---|
| EI level | EIPC, EIPSW, EIIC, EIWR |
| FE level | FEPC, FEPSW, FEIC, FEWR |

## 4.2   Operation When Acknowledging an Exception

Check whether each exception that is reported during instruction execution is acknowledged according to the priority. The procedure for exception-specific acknowledgment operation is shown below.

<1>  Check whether the acknowledgment conditions are satisfied and whether exceptions are acknowledged according to their priority.

<2>  Calculate the exception handler address according to the current PSW value[Note 1].

<3>  For FE level exceptions, the following processing is performed.

- Saving the PC to FEPC

- Saving the PSW to FEPSW

- Storing the exception cause code in FEIC

- Updating the PSW[Note 2]

- Store the exception handler address calculated in <2> in the PC, and then pass control to the exception handler.

<4>  For EI level exceptions, the following processing is performed.

- Saving the PC to EIPC

- Saving the PSW to EIPSW

- Storing the exception cause code in EIIC

- Updating the PSW[Note 2]

- Store the exception handler address calculated in <2> in the PC, and then pass control to the exception handler.

**Notes**  1. For details, see **4.5   Exception Handler Address**.
2. For the values to be updated, see **Table 4-1   Exception Cause List**.

The following figure shows steps <1> to <4>.

**Figure 4-4  Operation When Acknowledging an Exception**

An exception occurs.

Are the PSW.NP acknowledgment conditions satisfied? — No

Yes

Are the PSW.ID acknowledgment conditions satisfied? — No

Yes

Calculate the exception handler address.

Is this an FE level exception? — No

Yes

```
FEPC        ←PC
FEPSW       ←PSW
FEIC        ←Exception cause code
Update PSW.
```

```
EIPC        ←PC
EIPSW       ←PSW
EIIC        ←Exception cause code
Update PSW.
```

PC←Exception handler address

Pending exception handling

Exception handling

## 4.2.1  Special Operations

### (1)  EP bit of PSW register

If an interrupt is acknowledged, the PSW.EP bit is cleared to 0. If an exception other than an interrupt is acknowledged, the PSW.EP bit is set to 1.

Depending on the EP bit setting, the operation changes when the EIRET or FERET instruction is executed. If the EP bit is cleared to 0, the bit with the highest priority (0 is the highest) among the bits set to 1 in ISPR.ISP7 to ISPR.ISP0 is cleared to 0. Also, the end of the exception handling routine is reported to the external interrupt controller. This function is necessary for correctly controlling resources, such as a request flag, on the interrupt controller when an interrupt is acknowledged or when execution returns from the interrupt.

To return from an interrupt, be sure to execute the return instruction with the EP bit cleared to 0.

### (2)  Coprocessor unusable exception

This CPU does not have a coprocessor. If an attempt is made to execute a coprocessor instruction that is not included in the product or for which the operation state prevents use, or an LDSR or STSR instruction attempts to access a coprocessor system register, a coprocessor unusable exception (UCPOP) immediately occurs.

### (3)  Reserved instruction exception

If an opcode that is reserved for future function extension and for which no instruction is defined is executed, a reserved instruction exception (RIE) occurs.

However, which of the following two types of operations each opcode is to perform might be defined by the hardware specifications.

- Reserved instruction exception occurs.
- Operates as a defined instruction.

An opcode for which a reserved instruction exception occurs is always defined as an RIE instruction.

### (4)  Reset

Reset is performed in the same way as exception handling, but it is not regarded as EI level exception or FE level exception. The reset operation is the same that of an exception without acknowledgment conditions, but the value of each register is changed to the value after reset. In addition, execution does not return from the reset status. All exceptions that have occurred at the same time as CPU initialization are canceled and not acknowledged even after CPU initialization.

For details, see **CHAPTER 7  RESET**.

## 4.3   Return from Exception Handling

To return from exception handling, execute the return instruction (EIRET or FERET) corresponding to the relevant
exception level.

When a context has been saved, such as to a stack, the context must be restored before executing the return instruction.

When execution is returned from an irrecoverable exception, the status before the exception occurs in the original program
cannot be restored. Consequently, the execution result might differ from that when the exception does not occur.

The EIRET instruction is used to return from EI level exception handling and the FERET instruction is used to return from
FE level exception handling.

When the EIRET or FERET instruction is executed, the CPU performs the following processing and then passes control to
the return PC address.

<1> When the EIRET instruction is executed, return PC and PSW are loaded from the EIPC and EIPSW registers.
   When the FERET instruction is executed, return PC and PSW are loaded from the FEPC and FEPSW
   registers.

<2> Control is passed to the address indicated by the return PC that were loaded.

<3> When the EIRET instruction is executed while EP = 0 and INTCFG.ISPC = 0, the CPU updates the ISPR
   register.
   When the FERET instruction is executed, the CPU does not update the ISPR register.

The flow for returning from exception handling using the EIRET or FERET instruction is shown below.

**Figure 4-5  Return Instruction-Based Exception Return Flow**
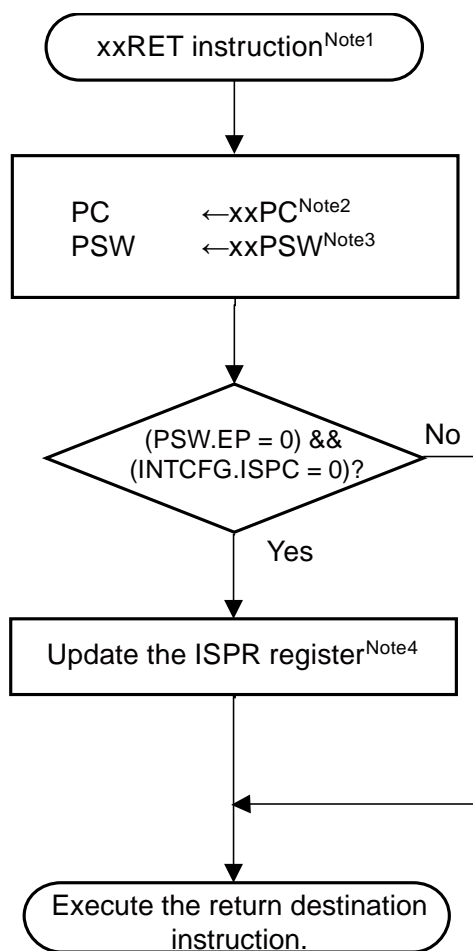


Notes 1. It is the EIRET instruction when returning from an EI level exception, or the FERET instruction when returning from an FE level exception.

2. It is EIPC when returning from an EI level exception, or FEPC when returning from an FE level exception.

3. It is EIPSW when returning from an EI level exception, or FEPSW when returning from an FE level exception.

4. Only for the EIRET instruction.

## 4.4   Exception Management

This CPU does not have an exception management function.

## 4.5   Exception Handler Address

For this CPU, the exception handler address used for execution during reset input, exception acknowledgment, or interrupt acknowledgment can be changed according to the settings.

### 4.5.1  Resets, Exceptions, and Interrupts

The exception handler address for resets and exceptions is determined by using the direct vector method, in which the reference point of the exception handler address can be changed by using the PSW.EBV bit, RBASE register, and EBASE register. For interrupts, the direct vector method and table reference method can be selected for each channel. If the table reference method is selected, execution can branch to the address indicated by the exception handler table allocated in the memory.

---

**Caution** 1. The exception handler address of EIINT$n$ selected using the direct vector method differs from that of V850E2 products. In V850E2 products, a different exception handler address is individually assigned to each interrupt channel (EIINT$n$). In this CPU, one exception handler address is assigned to each interrupt priority. Consequently, interrupts that have the same priority level branch to the same exception handler.

---

**(1)  Direct vector method**

The CPU uses the result of adding the exception cause offset shown in **Table 4-3  Selection of Base Register/Offset Address** to the base address indicated by the RBASE or EBASE register as the exception handler address.

Whether to use the RBASE or EBASE register as the base address is selected according to the PSW.EBV bit[Note 1]. If the PSW.EBV bit is set to 1, the EBASE register value is used as the base address. If the bit is cleared to 0, the RBASE register value is used as the base address.

However, reset input and some exceptions[Note 2] always refer to the RBASE register.

In addition, user interrupts refer to the RINT bit of the corresponding base register, and reduce the offset address according to the bit status. If the RBASE.RINT bit or EBASE.RINT bit is set to 1, all user interrupts are handled using an offset of 100H. If the bit is cleared to 0, the offset address is determined according to **Table 4-3 Selection of Base Register/Offset Address**.

**Notes**  1. Exception acknowledgment itself sometimes updates the status of the PSW.EBV bit. In this case, the base register is selected based on the new bit value. For details, see **4.5  Exception Handler Address**.
2. The exceptions that always reference RBASE are determined according to the hardware specifications.

**Figure 4-6 Direct Vector Method**
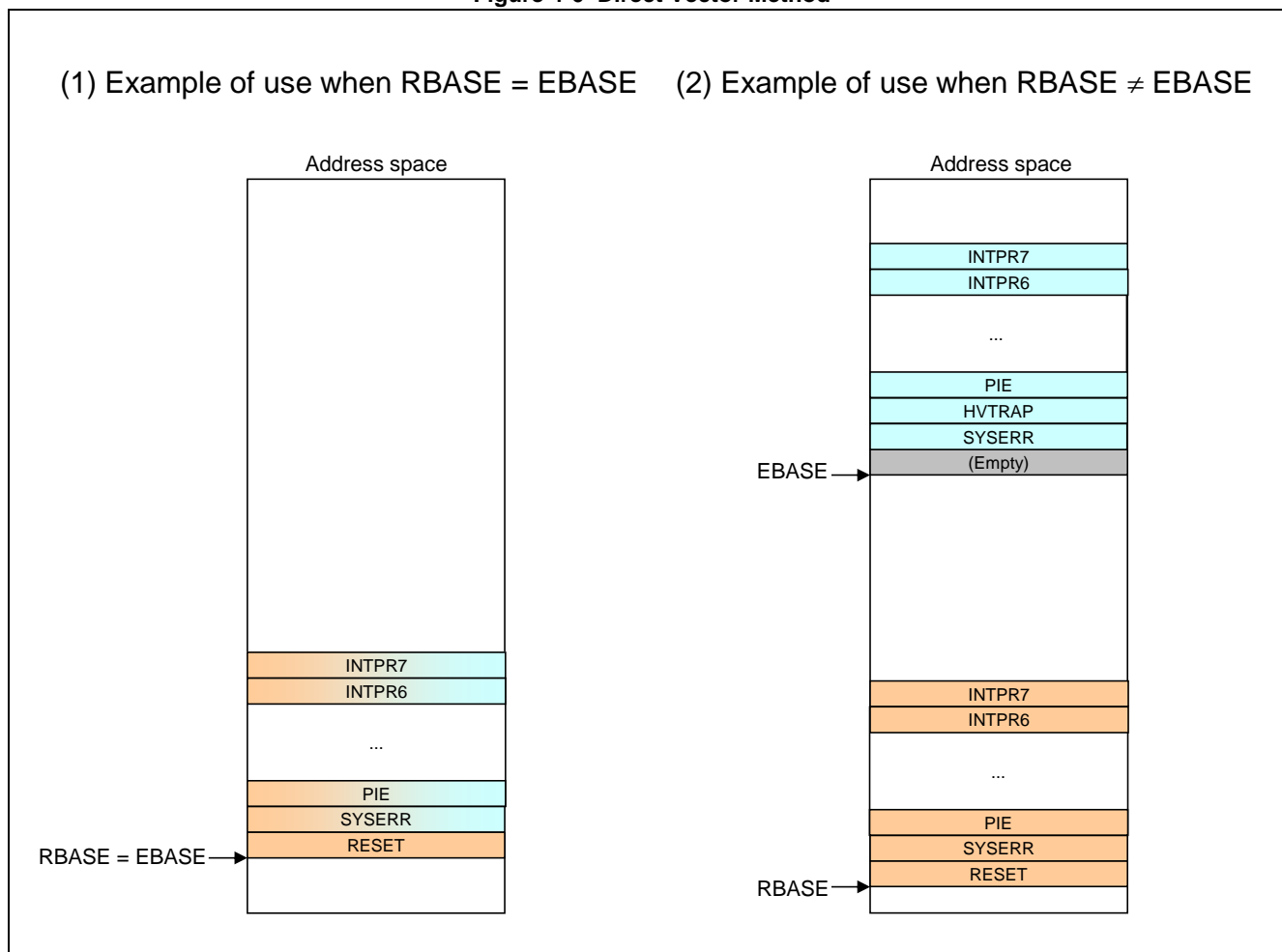


The table below shows how base register selection and offset address reduction function for each exception to determine the exception handler address. The PSW bit value determines the exception handler, based on the value after being updated due to the acknowledgment of an exception.

**Table 4-3  Selection of Base Register/Offset Address**

| | PSW.EBV = 0 | PSW.EBV = 1 | RINT = 0 | RINT = 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Base Register | | Offset Address | |
| RESET | RBASE | None[Note 1] | 000H | 000H |
| SYSERR | | EBASE | 010H | 010H |
| FETRAP | | | 030H | 030H |
| TRAP0 | | | 040H | 040H |
| TRAP1 | | | 050H | 050H |
| RIE | | | 060H | 060H |
| FPP/FPI [Note 3] | | | 070H | 070H |
| UCPOP | | | 080H | 080H |
| MIP/MDP | | | 090H | 090H |
| PIE | | | 0A0H | 0A0H |
| Debug[Note 2] | | | 0B0H | 0B0H |
| MAE | | | 0C0H | 0C0H |
| (R.F.U.) | | | 0D0H | 0D0H |
| FENMI | | | 0E0H | 0E0H |
| FEINT | | | 0F0H | 0F0H |
| EIINT*n* (priority 0) | | | 100H | 100H |
| EIINT*n* (priority 1) | | | 110H | |
| EIINT*n* (priority 2) | | | 120H | |
| EIINT*n* (priority 3) | | | 130H | |
| EIINT*n* (priority 4) | | | 140H | |
| EIINT*n* (priority 5) | | | 150H | |
| EIINT*n* (priority 6) | | | 160H | |
| EIINT*n* (priority 7) | | | 170H | |

**Notes** 1. An exception generated to update EBV to 0.
2. The exception for debug function.
3. FPU exceptions do not occur because the product does not have an FPU.

Base register selection is used to execute the exception handling for resets and some hardware errors by using programs in a relatively reliable area such as ROM instead of areas that are easily affected by software errors such as RAM and cache areas. The user interrupt offset address reduction function is used to reduce the memory size required by the exception handler for specific system-internal operating modes. The main purpose of this is to minimize the amount of memory consumed in operating modes that use only the minimum functionality, which are used, for example, during system maintenance and diagnosis.

**(2) Table reference method**

In the direct vector method, there is one user-interrupt exception handler for each interrupt priority level, and interrupt channels that indicate multiple interrupts with the same priority branch to the same interrupt handler, but some users might want to use code areas that differ from the start time for each interrupt handler.

When using the table reference method, if the table reference method is specified as the interrupt channel vector selection method for the interrupt controller, the method for determining the exception handler address when an interrupt request corresponding to that interrupt channel is acknowledged differs as follows.

<1>     In any of the following cases, the exception handler address is determined by using the direct vector method.

* When PSW.EBV = 0 and RBASE.RINT = 1

* When PSW.EBV = 1 and EBASE.RINT = 1

* When the interrupt channel setting is not the table reference method

<2>     In cases other than <1>, calculate the table reference position.

Exception handler address read position = INTBP register + channel number * 4 bytes

<3>     Read word data starting at the interrupt handler address read position calculated in <2>.

<4>     Use the word data read in <3> as the exception handler address.

---

**Caution**   For details about the interrupt channel settings, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

A table of exception handler address read positions corresponding to interrupt channels and an overview of the placement in memory are shown below.

**Table 4-4  Exception Handler Address Expansion**

| Type | Exception Handler Address Read Position |
|---|---|
| EIINT interrupt channel 0 | INTBP + 0 * 4 |
| EIINT interrupt channel 1 | INTBP + 1 * 4 |
| ... | ... |
| EIINT interrupt channel 510 | INTBP + 510 * 4 |
| EIINT interrupt channel 511 | INTBP + 511 * 4 |

**Figure 4-7  Overview of Using the Table Reference Method**
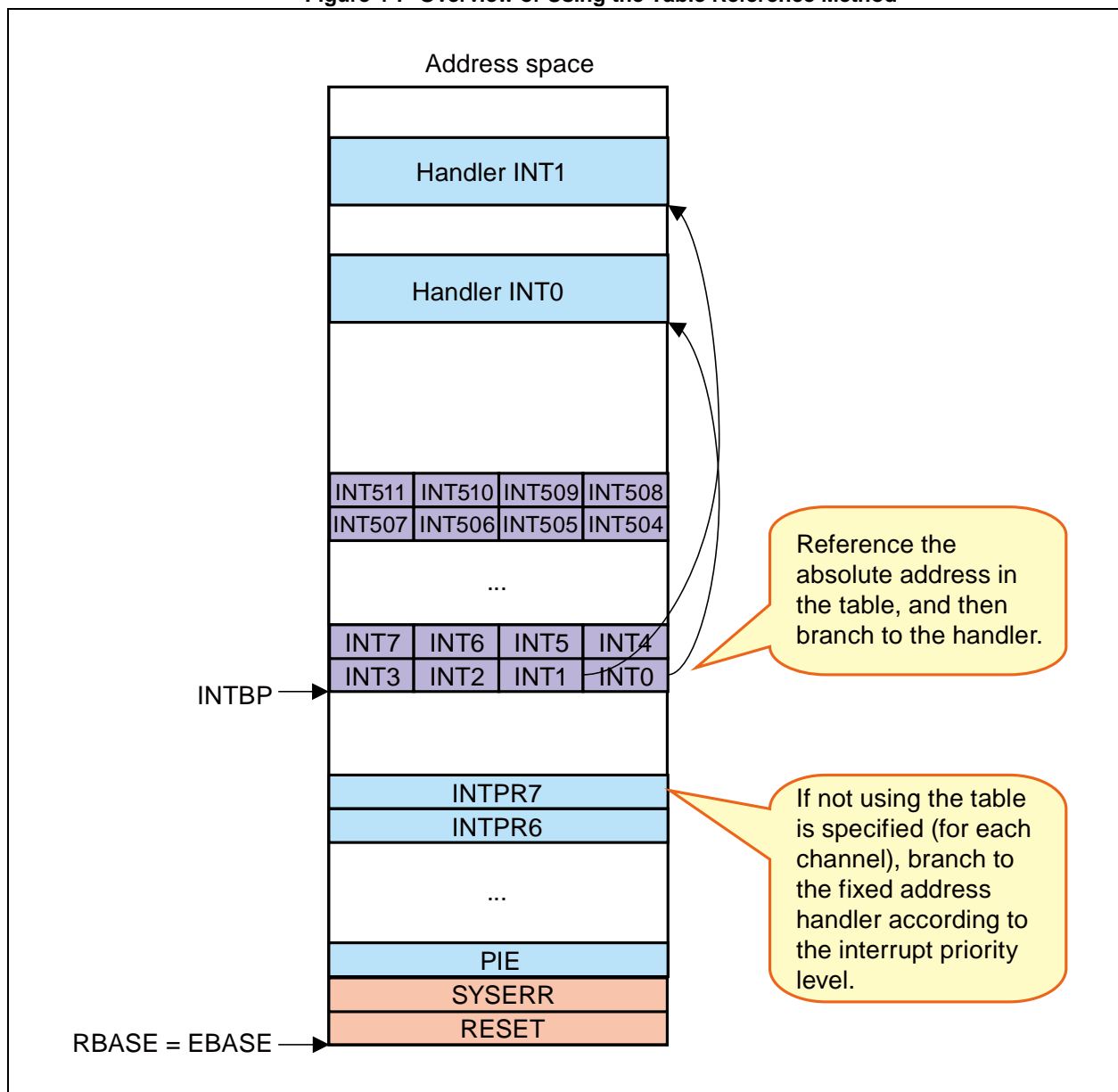


For details about the exception handler address selection method settings for each interrupt channel, see the hardware manual of the product used.

### 4.5.2  System Calls

For system call exceptions, the referenced table entry is selected according to the value of the vector specified based on the opcode and the value of the SCCFG.SIZE bit, and the exception handler address is calculated according to the contents of the table entry and the SCBP register value.

As an example, if table size *n* is specified by SCCFG.SIZE, the table entry is selected as shown below. Note that if the vector specified by the SYSCALL instruction (vector 8) is greater than table size *n*, the table entry referenced by vector n + 1 to 255 is table entry 0.

**Table 4-5  System Calls**

| Vector | Exception Cause Code | Referenced Table Entry |
|--------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 0 | 0000 8000H | Table entry 0 |
| 1 | 0000 8001H | Table entry 1 |
| 2 | 0000 8002H | Table entry 2 |
| ... | ... | ... |
| n − 1 | 0000 8000H + (n − 1)H | Table entry n − 1 |
| n | 0000 8000H + nH | Table entry n |
| n + 1 | 0000 8000H + (n + 1)H | Table entry 0 |
| ... | ... | ... |
| 254 | 0000 80FEH | Table entry 0 |
| 255 | 0000 80FFH | Table entry 0 |

**Caution**   Because table entry 0 is selected even if a vector that exceeds n, which is specified for SCCFG.SIZE, is specified, allocate the error processing routine.

### 4.5.3 Models for Application

The following describes the relations among the RBASE, EBASE, and PSW.EBV bit, and the models intended for application. Principally, in cases where a reset occurs and there is no main code in the address space, this main code is first expanded into the address space (which is often in DRAM) by bootstrapping to enable execution, or it is used to when inserting an instruction cache into an exception handling routine.

Immediately after a reset, when PSW.EBV = 0, operations use the ROM area where the minimum maintenance code was placed as specified in RBASE. After bootstrapping, and after the required code has been expanded in RAM, the code position in the RAM is set to the EBASE register and the PSB.EBV bit is set to 1**Note 1**.

Normally, this is the mode of software operations. As for exceptions or interrupts in the range of normal operations, because they are acknowledged when PSW.EBV = 1, the code operates in the RAM area indicated by EBASE, but in cases where phenomena (such as RAM errors or cache errors) occur that would indicate the RAM code itself has not remained correct, an exception is triggered to clear to 0 the PSB.EBV bit**Note 2**. In such cases, there is a possibility that the exception handler itself might not be executed correctly using the code at the position indicated by EBASE, so control is moved to the exception handler in the ROM code indicated by RBASE and the PSW.EBV bit is cleared to 0.

Once the PSW.EBV bit is cleared to 0, even if an ordinary exception were to occur while in this mode, the status of the PSW.EBV bit is handed over, so that a mode enabling correct execution of RAM code is maintained, and operation uses code in the ROM area indicated by RBASE until the PSW.EBV bit is set to 1 by the maintenance code.

**Notes** 1. Normally, an EIRET or FERET instruction should be used to set the PSW.EBV bit to 1.
2. The hardware specifications determine which exception has which cause, and whether or not an exception is needed to clear PSW.EBV to 0.

**Figure 4-8  Example of Model for Application (Operation Flow)**
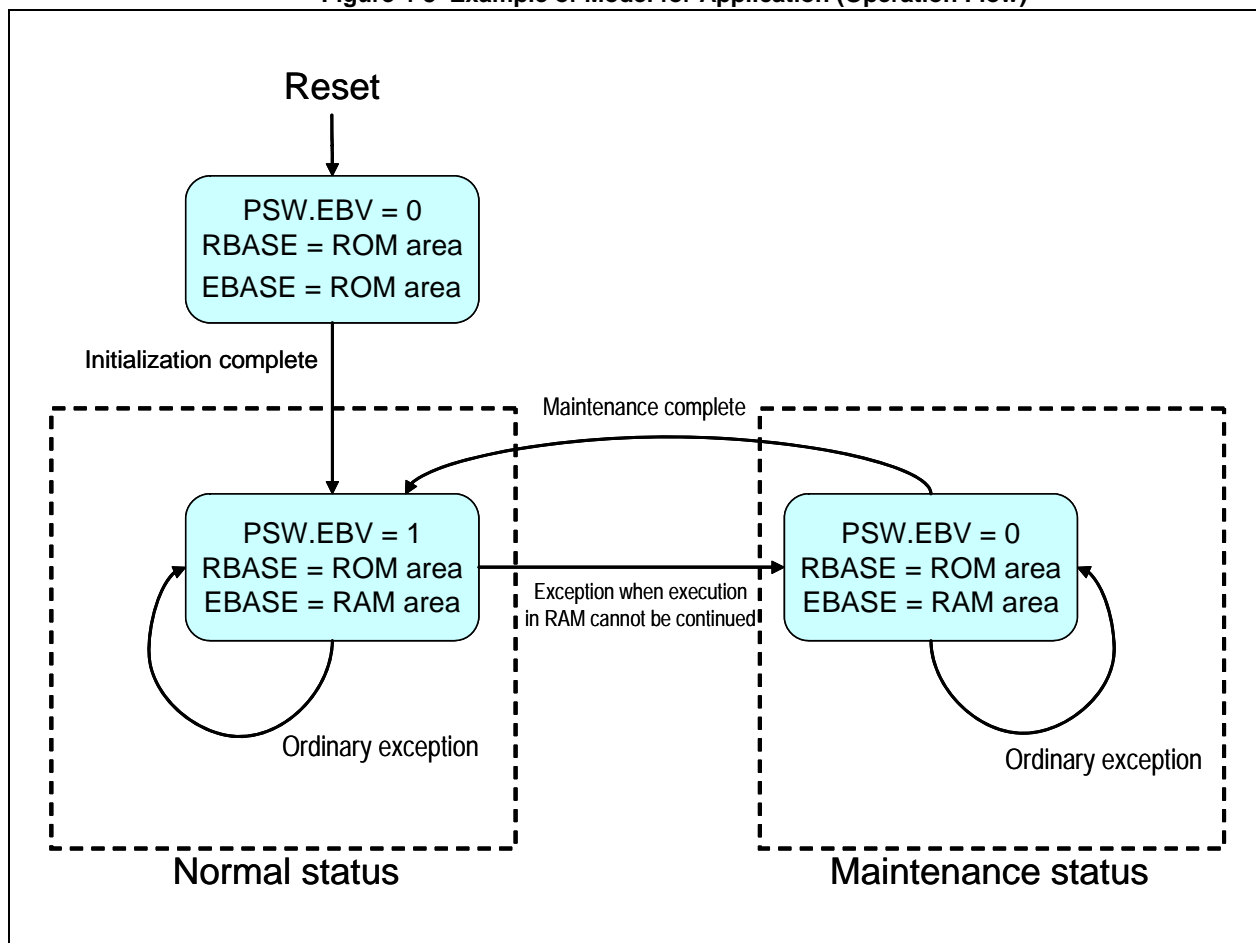
**Figure 4-9  Example of Model for Application (Address Map)**
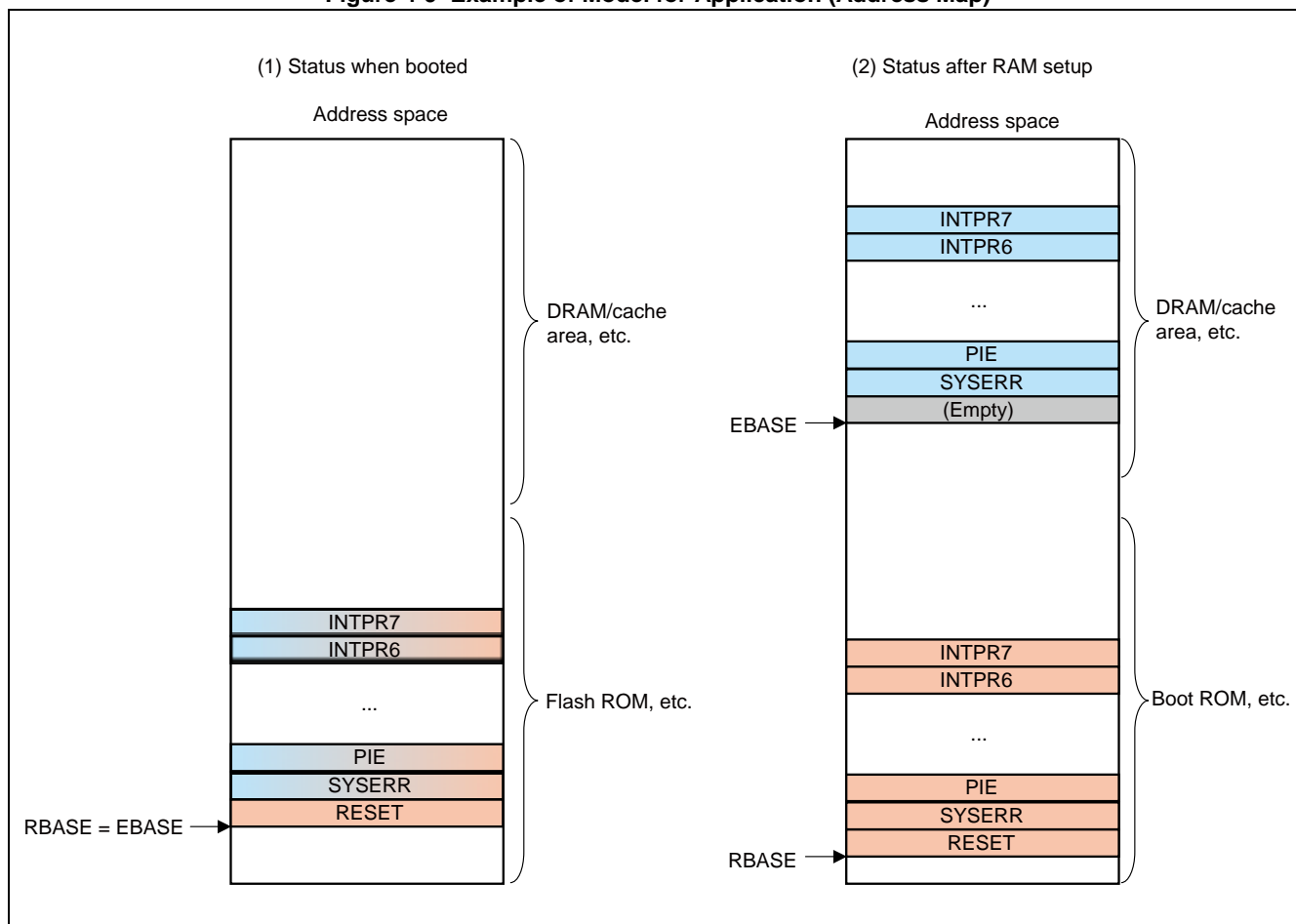
# CHAPTER 5  MEMORY MANAGEMENT

This CPU provides the following functions for managing the memory.

- Memory protection unit (MPU)

## 5.1   Memory Protection Unit (MPU)

Memory protection functions are provided in an MPU (memory protection unit) to maintain a smooth system by detecting and preventing unauthorized use of system resources by unreliable programs, runaway events, etc.

### 5.1.1  Features

**(1)  Memory access control**

Multiple protection areas can be assigned to the address space. Consequently, unauthorized program execution or data manipulation by user programs can be detected and prevented. The upper and lower limit addresses of each area can be specified so that the address space can be used precisely and efficiently.

**(2)  Access management for each CPU operation mode**

In this CPU, several status bits are used to control access to resources, and these bits are used in combination to perform protection that is appropriate, according to each program's level of reliability.

### 5.1.2  MPU Operation Settings

Before using a protection area, set up operation of the MPU function in supervisor mode. Normally, it is assumed that this setting is performed by management software, such as the OS.
Settings in supervisor mode fall into three types: initial settings, settings to change programs, and settings that are changed when handling exceptions. The processing flow is illustrated below.

**Figure 5-1  Example of MPU Processing Flow**

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┬─────────────────────────────┐
│  Supervisor mode                │  User mode                  │
│                                 │                             │
│   ┌──────────────────┐          │                             │
│ → │ Initial setting  │          │                             │
│   │ (MPM setting)    │          │                             │
│   └──────────────────┘          │                             │
│           │                     │                             │
│           ▼                     │                             │
│   ┌──────────────────┐   Task switch occurs                  │
│   │ Change programs  │ ◄──────────────────────────────┐      │
│   │(protection area  │          │                      │      │
│   │     setup)       │          │                      │      │
│   └──────────────────┘          │                      │      │
│           │                     │                      │      │
│           ▼                     │                      │      │
│   ┌──────────────────┐          │                      │      │
│   │ Switch to user   │──────────┐                      │      │
│   │     mode         │          │                      │      │
│   └──────────────────┘          ▼                      │      │
│           ▲                ┌──────────────┐            │      │
│           │                │ Application  │────────────┘      │
│           │                └──────────────┘                   │
│           │                     │                             │
│   ┌──────────────────┐   Exception                           │
│   │ When handling    │    occurs                             │
│   │  exceptions      │ ◄──────────┘                          │
│   │(protection area  │                                       │
│   │    setup)        │                                       │
│   └──────────────────┘                                       │
└─────────────────────────────────┴─────────────────────────────┘
```
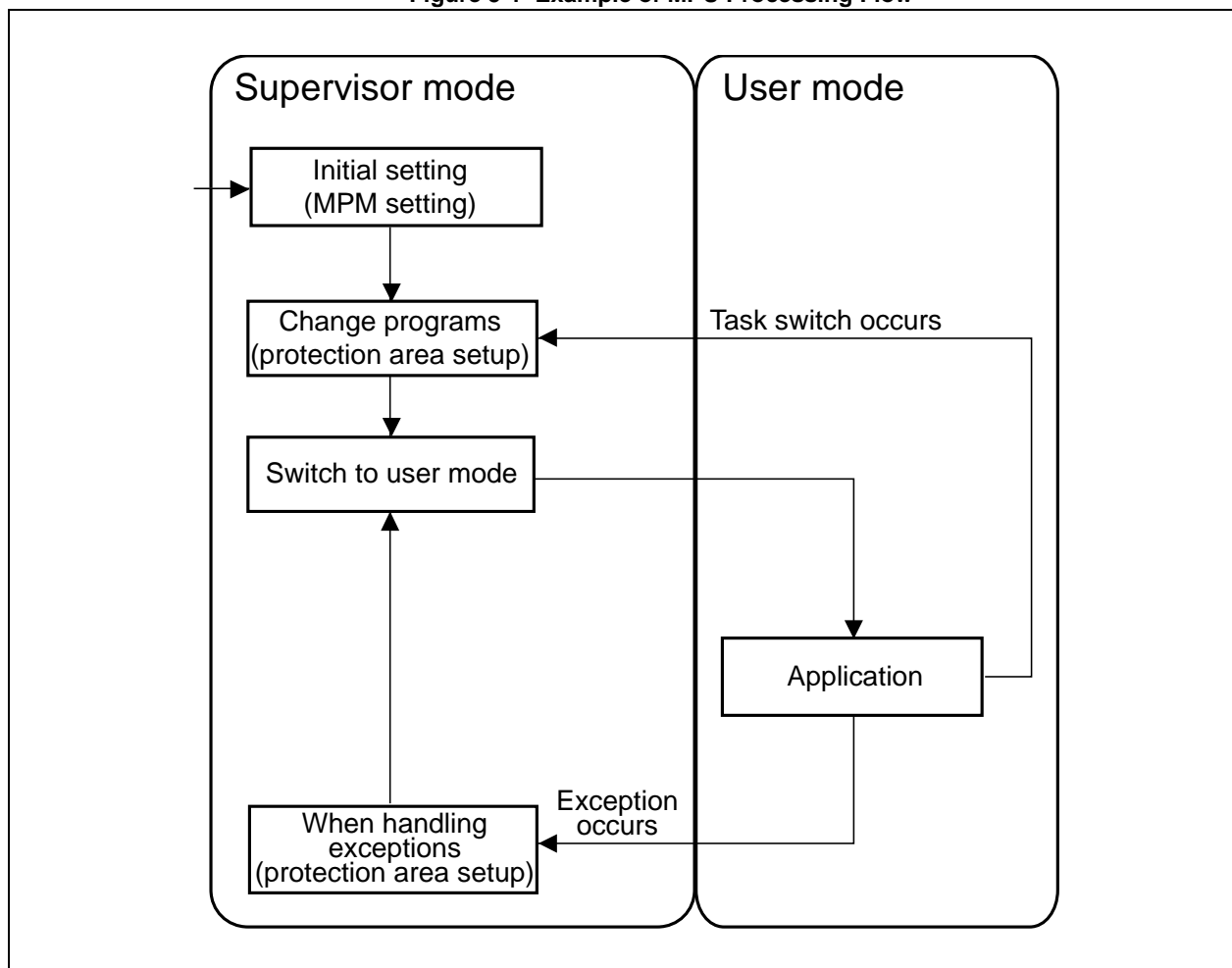
The initial settings are set as appropriate values in the MPM register. Always use the MPE bit to validate the MPU.

The SVP bit should be set to 1 only when protection is also being performed by a supervisor such as an OS.

---

**Caution**   In some products, the SVP bit is fixed to 0 and its value cannot be changed. For details, see the

hardware manual of the product used.

---

> **Caution**  Perform the following procedures in advance only when the SVP bit will be set to 1.
>
> - Before setting (to 1) the SR, SW, or SX bit in the protection area, correctly set up the MPUAn and MPLAn registers in the same protection area.
> - No procedures are necessary if the SR, SW, and SX bits will not be set to 1.
> - Note with caution that when the SVP bit is set to 1, the management program (OS, etc.) that sets the SVP itself cannot be executed. If a setting error is made, continued execution might become impossible due to recursive occurrence of MIP or MDP exceptions.

When switching programs, the protection area for the target program might need to be set up. For details about protection area settings, see **5.1.3  Protection Area Settings**.

During exception handling, unlike processing that sets a recovery as part of ordinary error processing, a management program determines whether or not the address where the exception occurred can be used and, when demand paging is performed to continue execution, the protection area might be changed.

As when programs are switched, protection area settings are changed, as described in **5.1.3  Protection Area Settings** below.

## 5.1.3  Protection Area Settings

### (1)  Protection area settings

Set the respective protection areas appropriately. For details about registers, see **CHAPTER 3  REGISTER REFERENCE**.

Some additional description is provided below regarding certain caution points.

#### (a)  E bit

This sets the target protection area setup as enabled or disabled. When disabled, all settings are disabled. Make sure valid setting values have been stored for other protection areas (MPUA, MPLA, and MPAT) before or at the time when this bit is set to 1.

#### (b)  UX, UR, and UW bits

These bits indicate the access privileges for the target protection area during user mode.

#### (c)  SX, SR, and SW bits

These bits indicate the access privileges for the target protection area during supervisor mode. These bits are valid only when the MPM.SVP bit has been set to 1. If the MPM.SVP bit has been cleared to 0, protection is not performed while in supervisor mode, regardless of the values of the SX, SR, and SW bits, and the entire address space becomes access-enabled.

---

**Caution**   In some products, the SX, SR, and SW bits are fixed to 0 and their values cannot be changed. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

#### (d)  G bit and ASID field

These are the G (Global) bit and the ASID field for comparison. When the G bit is cleared to 0, the values in the ASID register are compared to those in the MPAT.ASID field, and protection area settings are applied to determine accessibility only when these values match. When the G bit is set to 1, protection area settings are applied regardless of the ASID values.

### 5.1.4  Caution Points for Protection Area Setup

**(1)  Crossing protection area boundaries**

When the range of the protection areas overlaps, enabling of the protection area always takes priority (that is, if

any of the protection areas is enabled, protection is enabled for the area).

**(2)  Invalid protection area settings**

Protection area settings are invalid in the following case.

• When value set to lower-limit address is larger than value set to upper-limit address

| | |
|---|---|
| **Caution** | Note, however, that addresses are handled as unsigned integers (0H to FFFFFFFFH). |

### 5.1.5  Access Control

In this CPU, accesses are controlled appropriately according to the settings specified as of the step described in **5.1.3**

**Protection Area Settings**. In any of the cases listed below, the CPU ensures logical integrity by limiting actual access,

detecting violations before instruction execution is completed, and setting up exceptions.


- When about to execute an instruction that includes opcode, at an address outside the executable range
- When about to execute an instruction that reads from an address outside the read-accessible range
- When about to execute an instruction that writes to an address outside the write-accessible range


The specifics of access control vary depending on the hardware specifications, but all have the following points in common.


- When the access result is a prohibit judgment, it is not reflected in memory or I/O devices.
- When the access result is an enabled judgment, it is reflected in memory or I/O devices.


> **Cautions** 1. Even when access is enabled, there might be cases where access is blocked by another function
> that prohibits it.
>
> 2. In some cases, access judged to be prohibited may be executed for a memory or I/O device. The
> cases are as listed below.
>     Reading local RAM
>     Reading of code flash memory by an instruction prefetched from the instruction cache
> Since execution in response to exceptions due to instructions that read from the local RAM or
> execute the results of prefetching and so on is inhibited, such access does not affect the execution
> of instructions. However, when a debugger is monitoring access to local RAM or code flash
> memory, it may observe access judged to be prohibited.

## 5.1.6   Violations and Exceptions

In this CPU, violations are detected during instruction fetch access or operand access according to the protection area settings, and an exception is generated.

• Execution protection violation (during instruction access)

• Data protection violation (during operand access)

### (1)   Execution protection violation (MIP exception)

This violation is detected when an instruction is executed. An execution protection violation such as this is detected when attempting to execute an instruction that has been placed in a non-executable area within the program area. When an execution protection violation is detected, an MIP exception always occurs.

### (2)   Data protection violation (MDP exception)

This violation is detected during data access by an instruction. A data protection violation such as this is detected when a memory access instruction attempts to access data from an access-prohibited part of the data area. When a data protection violation is detected, an MDP exception always occurs.

### (3)   Exception cause code and exception address

When an instruction protection violation or data protection violation has been detected, the exception cause code is determined as shown in **Table 5-1**. The determined exception cause code is set to the FEIC register.
The MEA register is used to store either the PC of the instruction that detected the instruction protection violation or the access address used when the data protection violation occurred. The MEA register is shared in order to prevent simultaneous occurrence of MIP and MDP exceptions. Also, when a data protection violation occurs, the information of the instruction that caused the violation is stored in the MEI register.

**Table 5-1  Exception Cause Code of Memory Protection Violation**

| Exception | Operation Mode When Violation Occurred | Bit Number and Bit Name | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 31 to 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 to 0 |
| | | — | MS | BL | RMW | SX | SW | SR | UX | UW | UR | — |
| MIP | User mode | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 90H |
| | Supervisor mode | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 90H |
| MDP | User mode | 0 | Note 5 | Note 4 | Note 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Note 2 | Note 1 | 91H |
| | Supervisor mode | 0 | | | | 0 | Note 2 | Note 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 91H |

**Notes** 1. When a read violation is caused by an instruction that includes a read operation, either the SR or UR bit is set to 1.

2. When a write violation is caused by an instruction that includes a write operation, either the SW or UW bit is set to 1.

3. This bit is set to 1 when a violation is caused by the SET1, NOT1, CLR1, or CAXI instruction.

4. This bit is set to 1 when a violation is caused by the PREPARE, DISPOSE, PUSHSP, or POPSP instruction.

5. This bit is set to 1 when the instruction causing the violation performs a misaligned access.

**Remark** UR:   A violation is detected during a read operation in user mode (PSW.UM = 1).

UW:   A violation is detected during a write operation in user mode (PSW.UM = 1).

UX:   A violation is detected during instruction execution in user mode (PSW.UM = 1).

SR:   A violation is detected during a read operation in supervisor mode (PSW.UM = 0).

SW:   A violation is detected during a write operation in supervisor mode (PSW.UM = 0).

SX:   A violation is detected during instruction execution in supervisor mode (PSW.UM = 0).

RMW: Set to 1 when the instruction causing the violation contains a read-modify-write operation (SET1, NOT1, CLR1, or CAXI).

BL:   Set to 1 when the instruction causing the violation performs a block transfer (PREPARE, DISPOSE, PUSHSP, or POPSP).

MS:   Set to 1 when the instruction causing the violation performs a misaligned access.

---

**Caution**   In products where the value of the SVP bit is fixed to 0, the SR, SW, and SX bits are fixed to 0 and cannot be set to 1. For details on the SVP bit, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

### 5.1.7   Memory Protection Setting Check Function

This CPU does not have a function for checking the memory protection settings.

## 5.2   Cache

This CPU does not have a cache.

## 5.3   Mutual Exclusion

This CPU provides instructions that enable shared resources to be controlled mutually exclusively from multiple programs when the system is operating in a multi-processor environment.

When using mutual exclusion, mutual exclusion variables have to be defined in the memory and all programs must operate in accordance with the appropriate instruction flow.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Caution** | Embedded CPUs in a single-processor configuration use a programming model in which data coherence is maintained by disabling the acknowledgment of maskable interrupts. This is a very easy and sure method of maintaining data coherence, but naturally in a multi-processor, multiple programs might be executing and attempting to use the data at the same time. In this case it is not possible to maintain data coherence simply by disabling maskable interrupt acknowledgment. |

### 5.3.1  Shared Data that does not Require Mutual Exclusion Processing

This CPU maintains data access coherence even in a multi-processor environment by enabling the following types of access.

- Access in which the data is aligned to the size that matches the data type (aligned access)
  - LD, ST, SLD, SST, LDL, and STC instructions (LDL and STC are handled as LD and ST)
- Access by using a bit manipulation instruction (SET1, CLR1, or NOT1) (read-modify-write)
- Access by using the CAXI instruction (read-modify-write)

With some exceptions, mutual exclusion is achieved by using these types of data access. In other words, it is guaranteed that while one CPU is executing the instructions that perform the above data accesses, another CPU is not accessing the data in question. This is known as an instruction being executed atomically or an instruction providing an atomic guarantee. Note that the atomic execution of an instruction means that a data access bus transaction completes with no disruption; it does not necessarily mean that a series of transactions has been completed.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Caution** | The extent to which coherency is guaranteed might be limited, depending on the hardware specifications. For example, for some memories, coherency might not be preserved even if aligned access is used. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used. |

### 5.3.2  Performing Mutual Exclusion by Using the LDL.W and STC.W Instructions

This CPU cannot apply mutual exclusion to the LDL.W and STC.W instructions.

### 5.3.3  Performing Mutual Exclusion by Using the SET1 Instruction

The SET1 instruction can be used to perform mutual exclusion over multiple data arrays. By executing the SET1

instruction on the same bit in the memory and then checking the PSW.Z flag, which indicates the execution result, it can

be determined whether lock acquisition succeeded or failed.

> **Cautions** 1.  Depending on the hardware specifications, the system performance might drop if exclusive control
> is executed frequently by using the SET1 instruction, because this causes the bus to be occupied
> for a long time. It is therefore recommended to execute exclusive control by using the LDL/STC
> instructions as much as possible.
>
> 2.  When performing mutual exclusion by using the SET1 instruction, to prevent the problem of
> excessive bus occupancy described in Caution 1 above, execute the snooze instruction before
> attempting to acquire a lock again after lock acquisition has failed, and adjust the lock acquisition
> loop execution interval.

#### (1)  Sample code

The sample code of a spinlock executed by using the SET1 instruction is shown below.

**Lock acquisition**

```
        mov    lock_adr, r20
Lock:   set1   0, 0[r20]
        bz     Lock_success
        snooze
        br     Lock
Lock_success:
```

**Lock release**

```
  clr1 0, 0[r20]
```

## 5.3.4  Performing Mutual Exclusion by Using the CAXI Instruction

The CAXI instruction can be used to perform mutual exclusion over multiple data arrays. By executing the CAXI instruction on the same word in the memory and then checking the destination register, it can be determined whether lock acquisition succeeded or failed.

> **Cautions** 1. Depending on the hardware specifications, the system performance might drop if exclusive control is executed frequently by using the CAXI instruction, because this causes the bus to be occupied for a long time. It is therefore recommended to execute exclusive control by using the LDL/STC instructions as much as possible.
> 2. When performing mutual exclusion by using the CAXI instruction, to prevent the problem of excessive bus occupancy described in Caution 1 above, execute the snooze instruction before attempting to acquire a lock again after lock acquisition has failed, and adjust the lock acquisition loop execution interval.

### (1) Sample code

The sample code of a spinlock executed by using the CAXI instruction is shown below.

**Lock acquisition**

```
       mov    lock_adr, r20
Lock:  mov    1, r21
       caxi   [r20], r0, r21
       bz     Lock_success
       snooze
       br     Lock
Lock_success:
```

**Lock release**

```
       st.w  r0, 0[r20]
```

# CHAPTER 6   INSTRUCTION

## 6.1   Opcodes and Instruction Formats

This CPU has two types of instructions: CPU instructions, which are defined as basic instructions, and coprocessor instructions, which are defined according to the application. This CPU does not have a coprocessor and so does not have coprocessor instructions.

### 6.1.1  CPU Instructions

Instructions classified as CPU instructions are allocated in the opcode area other than the area used in the format of the coprocessor instructions shown in **6.1.2  Coprocessor Instructions**.

CPU instructions are basically expressed in 16-bit and 32-bit formats. There are also several instructions that use option data to add bits, enabling the configuration of 48-bit and 64-bit instructions. For details, see the opcode of the relevant instruction in **6.2.2  Basic Instruction Set**.

Opcodes in the CPU instruction opcode area that do not define significant CPU instructions are reserved for future function expansion and cannot be used. For details, see **6.1.3  Reserved Instructions**.

### (1)   reg-reg instruction (Format I)

A 16-bit instruction format consists of a 6-bit opcode field and two general-purpose register specification fields.

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | reg1 | |
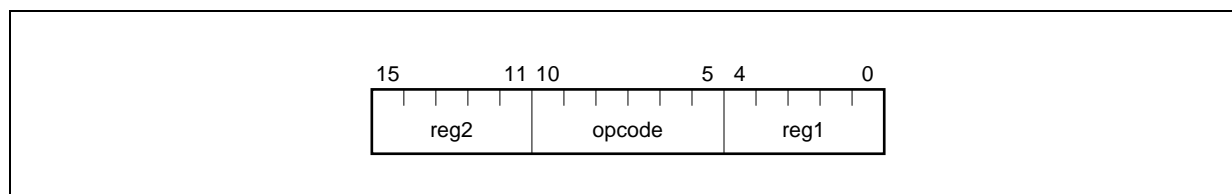
### (2)   imm-reg instruction (Format II)

A 16-bit instruction format consists of a 6-bit opcode field, 5-bit immediate field, and a general-purpose register specification field.

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | imm | |
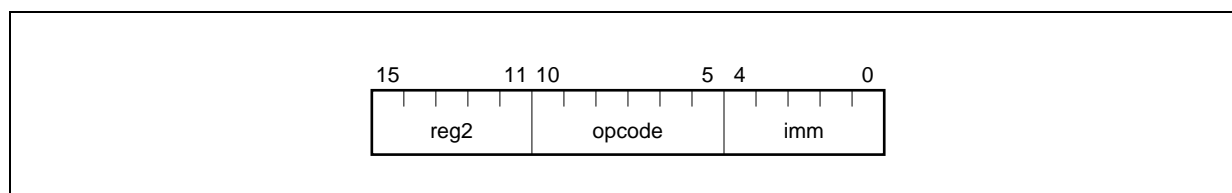
**(3)  Conditional branch instruction (Format III)**

A 16-bit instruction format consists of a 4-bit opcode field, 4-bit condition code field, and an 8-bit displacement field.

| 15 | 11 10 | 7 6 | 4 3 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| disp | opcode | disp | cond | |
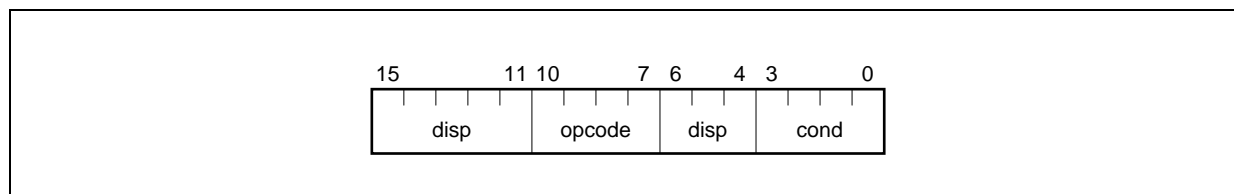
**(4)  16-bit load/store instruction (Format IV)**

A 16-bit instruction format consists of a 4-bit opcode field, a general-purpose register specification field, and a 7-bit displacement field (or 6-bit displacement field + 1-bit sub-opcode field).

| 15 | 11 10 | 7 6 | 1 0 |
|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | disp | |

disp/sub-opcode
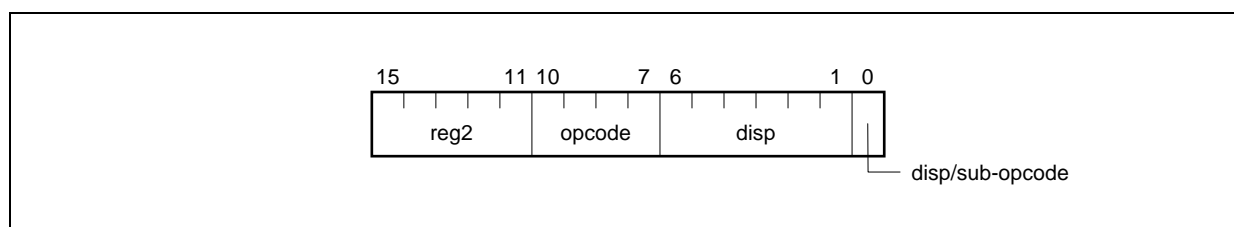
In addition, a 16-bit instruction format consists of a 7-bit opcode field, a general-purpose register specification field, and a 4-bit displacement field.

| 15 | 11 10 | 4 3 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | disp | |
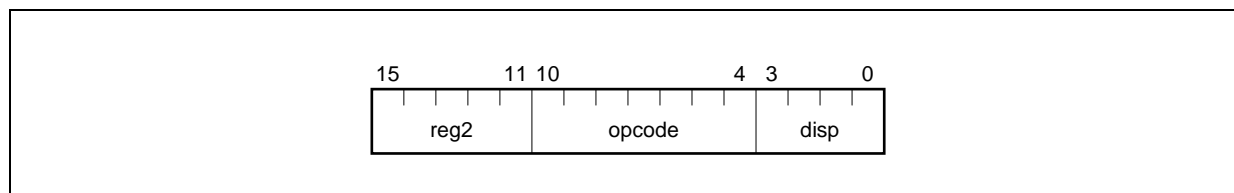
**(5)  Jump instruction (Format V)**

A 32-bit instruction format consists of a 5-bit opcode field, a general-purpose register specification field, and a 22-bit displacement field.

| 15 | 11 10 | 6 5 | 0 31 | 17 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | | disp | 0 |

**(6)  3-operand instruction (Format VI)**

A 32-bit instruction format consists of a 6-bit opcode field, two general-purpose register specification fields, and a 16-bit immediate field.

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | reg1 | imm | |

**(7)  32-bit load/store instruction (Format VII)**

A 32-bit instruction format consists of a 6-bit opcode field, two general-purpose register specification fields, and a 16-bit displacement field (or 15-bit displacement field + 1-bit sub-opcode field).

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 17 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | reg1 | disp | |

disp/sub-opcode ─┘

**(8)  Bit manipulation instruction (Format VIII)**

A 32-bit instruction format consists of a 6-bit opcode field, 2-bit sub-opcode field, 3-bit bit specification field, a general-purpose register specification field, and a 16-bit displacement field.

| 15 14 13 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| sub | bit # | opcode | reg1 | disp |
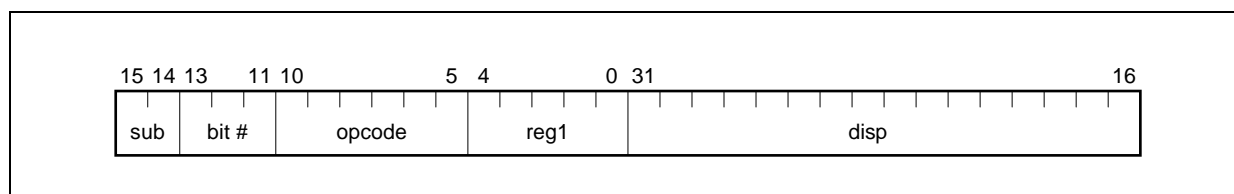
**(9)  Extended instruction format 1 (Format IX)**

This is a 32-bit instruction format that has a 6-bit opcode field and two general-purpose register specification fields, and handles the other bits as a sub-opcode field.

> **Caution**  Extended instruction format 1 might use part of the general-purpose register specification field or the sub-opcode field as a system register number field, condition code field, immediate field, or displacement field. For details, see the description of each instruction in **6.2.2  Basic Instruction Set**.

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 17 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | reg1 | sub-opcode | 0 |
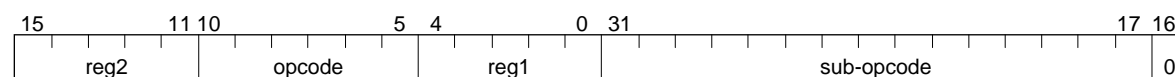
**(10) Extended instruction format 2 (Format X)**

This is a 32-bit instruction format that has a 6-bit opcode field and uses the other bits as a sub-opcode field.

> **Caution**  Extended instruction format 2 might use part of the general-purpose register specification field or the sub-opcode field as a system register number field, condition code field, immediate field, or displacement field. For details, see the description of each instruction in **6.2.2  Basic Instruction Set**.

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 17 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| sub-opcode | opcode | sub-opcode imm/vector | sub-opcode | 0 |
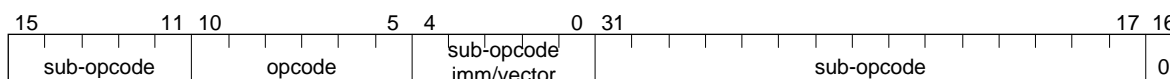
**(11) Extended instruction format 3 (Format XI)**

This is a 32-bit instruction format that has a 6-bit opcode field and three general-purpose register specification fields, and uses the other bits as a sub-opcode field.

> **Caution**  Extended instruction format 3 might use part of the general-purpose register specification field or the sub-opcode field as a system register number field, condition code field, immediate field, or displacement field. For details, see the description of each instruction in **6.2.2  Basic Instruction Set**.

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 27 26 | 17 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | reg1 | reg3 | sub-opcode | 0 |
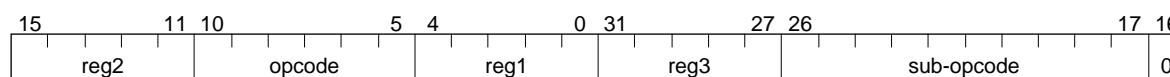
**(12) Extended instruction format 4 (Format XII)**

This is a 32-bit instruction format that has a 6-bit opcode field and two general-purpose register specification fields, and uses the other bits as a sub-opcode field.

---

**Caution**   Extended instruction format 4 might use part of the general-purpose register specification field or the sub-opcode field as a system register number field, condition code field, immediate field, or displacement field. For details, see the description of each instruction in **6.2.2  Basic Instruction Set**.

---

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 27 26 | 17 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| reg2 | opcode | sub-opcode | reg3 | sub-opcode | 0 |
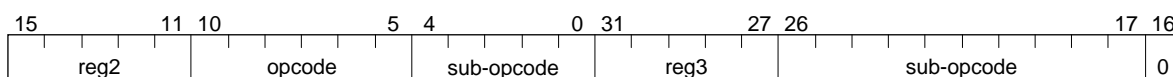
**(13) Stack manipulation instruction format (Format XIII)**

A 32-bit instruction format consists of a 5-bit opcode field, 5-bit immediate field, 12-bit register list field, 5-bit sub-opcode field, and one general-purpose register specification field (or 5-bit sub-opcode field).
The general-purpose register specification field is used as a sub-opcode filed, depending on the format of the instruction.

| 15 | 11 10 | 6 5 | 1 0 31 | 21 20 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sub-opcode | opcode | imm | list | reg2 | |
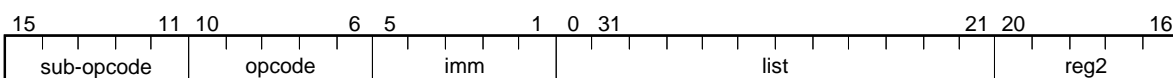
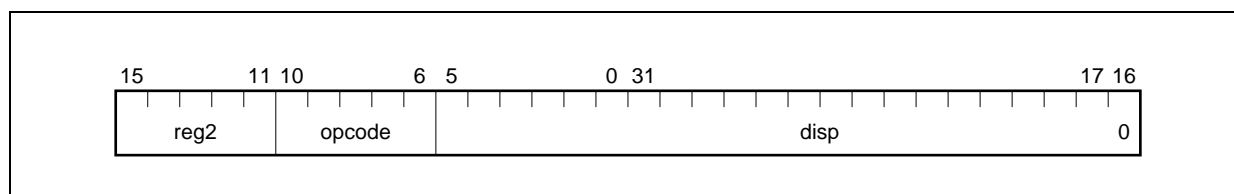**(14) Load/store instruction 48-bit format (Format XIV)**

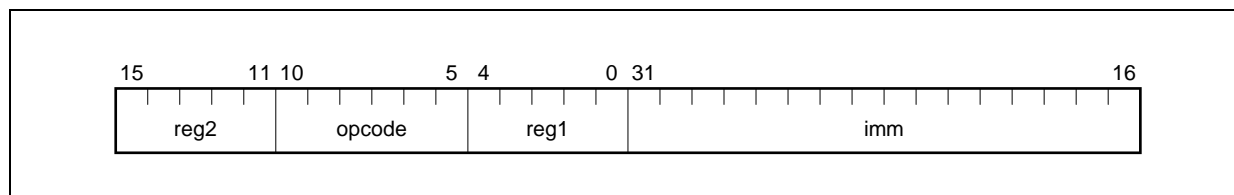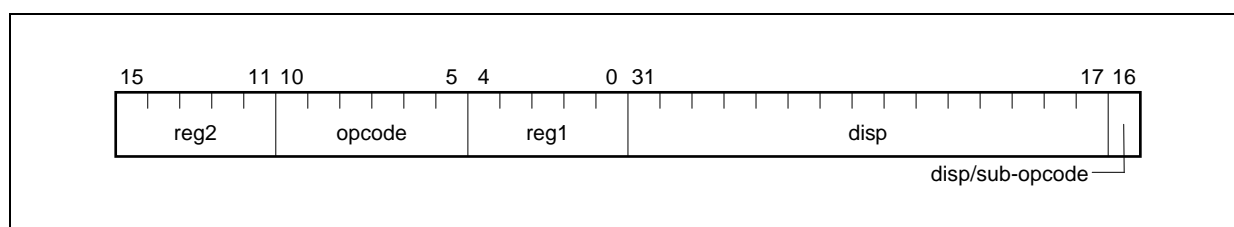This is a 48-bit instruction format that has a 6-bit opcode field, two general-purpose register specification fields, and a 23-bit displacement field, and uses the other bits as a sub-opcode field.

| 15 | 11 10 | 5 4 | 0 31 | 27 26 | 20 19 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sub-opcode | opcode | reg1 | reg3 | disp (low) | sub-opcode | |

| 47 | 32 |
|---|---|
| disp (high) | |
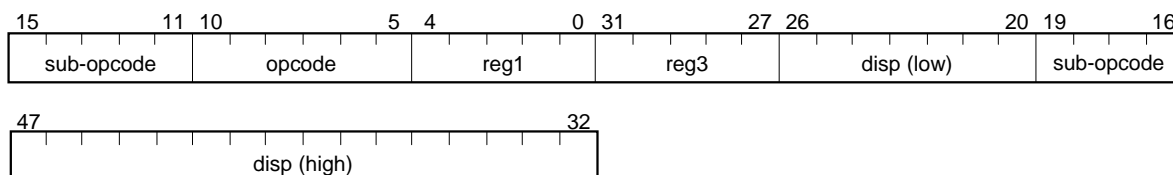
### 6.1.2  Coprocessor Instructions

Instructions in the following format are defined as coprocessor instructions. This CPU does not have a coprocessor and so does not have coprocessor instructions.
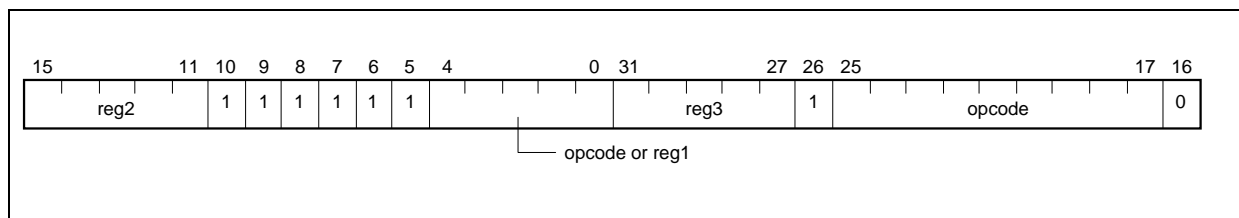


Coprocessor instructions define the functions of each coprocessor.

#### (1)  Coprocessor unusable exception

If an attempt is made to execute a coprocessor instruction, a coprocessor unusable exception (UCPOP) immediately occurs.

### 6.1.3  Reserved Instructions

An opcode reserved for future function extension and for which no instruction is defined is defined as a reserved instruction. It is defined by the hardware specifications that either of the following two types of operations is performed on the opcode of a reserved instruction.

- A reserved instruction exception occurs
- The reserved instruction is executed as an instruction

In this CPU, the following opcodes define the RIE instruction, which always causes a reserved instruction exception to occur.
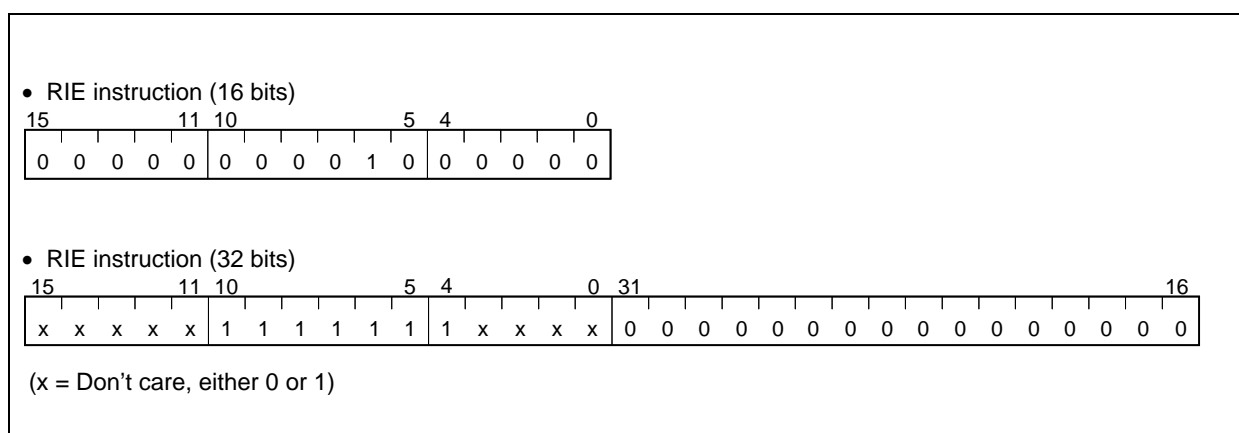
## 6.2   Basic Instructions

### 6.2.1  Overview of Basic Instructions

**(1)  Load instructions**

Execute data transfer from memory to register. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

**(a)  LD instructions**

- LD.B:          Load byte
- LD.BU:         Load byte unsigned
- LD.DW:         Load double word
- LD.H:          Load halfword
- LD.HU:         Load halfword unsigned
- LD.W:          Load word

**(b)  SLD instructions**

- SLD.B:         Short format load byte
- SLD.BU:        Short format load byte unsigned
- SLD.H:         Short format load halfword
- SLD.HU:        Short format load halfword unsigned
- SLD.W:         Short format load word

**(2)  Store instructions**

Execute data transfer from register to memory. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

**(a)  ST instructions**

- ST.B:          Store byte
- ST.DW:         Store double word
- ST.H:          Store halfword
- ST.W:          Store word

**(b)  SST instructions**

- SST.B:         Short format store byte
- SST.H:         Short format store halfword
- SST.W:         Short format store word

**(3)   Multiply instructions**

Execute multiplication in one clock cycle with the on-chip hardware multiplier. The following instructions

(mnemonics) are provided.

- MUL:            Multiply word
- MULH:           Multiply halfword
- MULHI:          Multiply halfword immediate
- MULU:           Multiply word unsigned

**(4)   Multiply-accumulate instructions**

After a multiplication operation, a value is added to the result. The following instructions (mnemonics) are available.

- MAC:            Multiply and add word
- MACU:           Multiply and add word unsigned

**(5)   Arithmetic instructions**

Add, subtract, transfer, or compare data between registers. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- ADD:            Add
- ADDI:           Add immediate
- CMP:            Compare
- MOV:            Move
- MOVEA:          Move effective address
- MOVHI:          Move high halfword
- SUB:            Subtract
- SUBR:           Subtract reverse

**(6)   Conditional arithmetic instructions**

Add and subtract operations are performed under specified conditions. The following instructions (mnemonics) are

available.

- ADF:            Add on condition flag
- SBF:            Subtract on condition flag

**(7)   Saturated operation instructions**

Execute saturated addition and subtraction. If the operation result exceeds the maximum positive value

(7FFFFFFFH), 7FFFFFFFH returns. If the operation result exceeds the maximum negative value (80000000H),

80000000H returns. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- SATADD:         Saturated add
- SATSUB:         Saturated subtract
- SATSUBI:        Saturated subtract immediate
- SATSUBR:        Saturated subtract reverse

**(8)  Logical instructions**

Include logical operation instructions. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- AND:           AND
- ANDI:          AND immediate
- NOT:           NOT
- OR:            OR
- ORI:           OR immediate
- TST:           Test
- XOR:           Exclusive OR
- XORI:          Exclusive OR immediate

**(9)  Data manipulation instructions**

Include data manipulation instructions and shift instructions with arithmetic shift and logical shift. Operands can be shifted by multiple bits in one clock cycle through the on-chip barrel shifter. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- BINS:          Bitfield insert
- BSH:           Byte swap halfword
- BSW:           Byte swap word
- CMOV:          Conditional move
- HSH:           Halfword swap halfword
- HSW:           Halfword swap word
- ROTL:          Rotate left
- SAR:           Shift arithmetic right
- SASF:          Shift and set flag condition
- SETF:          Set flag condition
- SHL:           Shift logical left
- SHR:           Shift logical right
- SXB:           Sign-extend byte
- SXH:           Sign-extend halfword
- ZXB:           Zero-extend byte
- ZXH:           Zero-extend halfword

**(10) Bit search instructions**

The specified bit values are searched among data stored in registers.

- SCH0L:         Search zero from left
- SCH0R:         Search zero from right
- SCH1L:         Search one from left
- SCH1R:         Search one from right

**(11) Divide instructions**

Execute division operations. Regardless of values stored in a register, the operation can be performed using a constant number of steps. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- DIV:              Divide word
- DIVH:             Divide halfword
- DIVHU:            Divide halfword unsigned
- DIVU:             Divide word unsigned

**(12) High-speed divide instructions**

These instructions perform division operations. The number of valid digits in the quotient is determined in advanced from values stored in a register, so the operation can be performed using a minimum number of steps. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- DIVQ:             Divide word quickly
- DIVQU:            Divide word unsigned quickly

**(13) Branch instructions**

Include unconditional branch instructions (JARL, JMP, and JR) and a conditional branch instruction (Bcond) which accommodates the flag status to switch controls. Program control can be transferred to the address specified by a branch instruction. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- Bcond (BC, BE, BGE, BGT, BH, BL, BLE, BLT, BN, BNC, BNE, BNH, BNL, BNV, BNZ, BP, BR, BSA, BV, BZ):              Branch on condition code
- JARL:             Jump and register link
- JMP:              Jump register
- JR:               Jump relative

**(14) Loop instruction**

- LOOP:            Loop

**(15) Bit manipulation instructions**

Execute logical operation on memory bit data. Only a specified bit is affected. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- CLR1:            Clear bit
- NOT1:            Not bit
- SET1:            Set bit
- TST1:            Test bit

### (16) Special instructions

Include instructions not provided in the categories of instructions described above. The following instructions (mnemonics) are provided.

- CALLT:        Call with table look up
- CAXI:         Compare and exchange for interlock
- CLL[Note1]:   Clear load link
- CTRET:        Return from CALLT
- DI:           Disable interrupt
- DISPOSE:      Function dispose
- EI:           Enable interrupt
- EIRET:        Return from trap or interrupt
- FERET:        Return from trap or interrupt
- FETRAP:       Software trap
- HALT:         Halt
- LDSR:         Load system register
- LDL.W [Note2]: Load linked word
- NOP:          No operation
- POPSP:        Pop registers from stack
- PREPARE:      Function prepare
- PUSHSP:       Push registers from stack
- RIE:          Reserved instruction exception
- SNOOZE:       Snooze
- STSR:         Store system register
- STC.W [Note2]: Store conditional word
- SWITCH:       Jump with table look up
- SYNCE:        Synchronize exceptions
- SYNCI:        Synchronize memory for instruction writers
- SYNCM:        Synchronize memory
- SYNCP:        Synchronize pipeline
- SYSCALL:      System call
- TRAP:         Trap

Note 1.  This CPU does not have a CLL instruction, and if it is issued, handles it as a reserved instruction.

   2.  The LDL.W and STC.W instructions are handled as the LD.W and ST.W instructions, respectively.

## 6.2.2  Basic Instruction Set

This section details each instruction, dividing each mnemonic (in alphabetical order) into the following items.

- Instruction format:     Indicates how the instruction is written and its operand(s) (for symbols, see **Table 6-1**).
- Operation:   Indicates the function of the instruction (for symbols, see **Table 6-2**).
- Format:   Indicates the instruction format (see **6.1  Opcodes and Instruction Formats**).
- Opcode:   Indicates the bit field of the instruction opcode (for symbols, see **Table 6-3**).
- Flag:   Indicates the change of flags of PSW (program status word) after the instruction execution.

     "0" is to clear (reset), "1" to set, and "--" to remain unchanged.
- Description: Describes the operation of the instruction.
- Supplement: Provides supplementary information on the instruction.
- Caution:   Provides precautionary notes.

**Table 6-1  Conventions of Instruction Format**

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| reg1 | General-purpose register (as source register) |
| reg2 | General-purpose register (primarily as destination register with some as source registers) |
| reg3 | General-purpose register (primarily used to store the remainder of a division result and/or the higher 32 bits of a multiplication result) |
| bit#3 | 3-bit data to specify bit number |
| imm× | ×-bit immediate data |
| disp× | ×-bit displacement data |
| regID | System register number |
| selID | System register group number |
| vector× | Data to specify vector (× indicates the bit size) |
| cond | Condition code (see **Table 6-4  Condition Codes**) |
| cccc | 4-bit data to specify condition code (see **Table 6-4  Condition Codes**) |
| sp | Stack pointer (r3) |
| ep | Element pointer (r30) |
| list12 | Lists of registers |
| rh-rt | Indicates multiple general-purpose registers, from the general-purpose register indicated by *rh* to the general-purpose register indicated by *rt*. |

**Table 6-2  Conventions of Operation**

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ← | Assignment |
| GR [ a ] | Value stored in general-purpose register *a* |
| SR [a, b ] | Value stored in system register (RegID = *a*, SelID = *b*) |
| (n:m) | Bit selection. Select from bit *n* to bit *m*. |
| zero-extend (n) | Zero-extends "n" to word |
| sign-extend (n) | Sign-extends "n" to word |
| load-memory (a, b) | Reads data of size *b* from address *a* |
| store-memory (a, b, c) | Writes data b of size *c* to address *a* |
| extract-bit (a, b) | Extracts value of bit b of data *a* |
| set-bit (a, b) | Sets value of bit b of data *a* |
| not-bit (a, b) | Inverts value of bit b of data *a* |
| clear-bit (a, b) | Clears value of bit b of data *a* |
| saturated (n) | Performs saturated processing of "n."<br>If n $\geq$ 7FFFFFFFH, n = 7FFFFFFFH.<br>If n $\leq$ 80000000H, n = 80000000H. |
| result | Outputs results on flag |
| Byte | Byte (8 bits) |
| Halfword | Halfword (16 bits) |
| Word | Word (32 bits) |
| == | Comparison (true upon a match) |
| != | Comparison (true upon a mismatch) |
| + | Add |
| – | Subtract |
| \|\| | Bit concatenation |
| × | Multiply |
| ÷ | Divide |
| % | Remainder of division results |
| AND | AND |
| OR | OR |
| XOR | Exclusive OR |
| NOT | Logical negate |
| logically shift left by | Logical left-shift |
| logically shift right by | Logical right-shift |
| arithmetically shift right by | Arithmetic right-shift |

**Table 6-3  Conventions of Opcode**

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| R | 1-bit data of code specifying reg1 or regID |
| r | 1-bit data of code specifying reg2 |
| w | 1-bit data of code specifying reg3 |
| D | 1-bit data of displacement (indicates higher bits of displacement) |
| d | 1-bit data of displacement |
| I | 1-bit data of immediate (indicates higher bits of immediate) |
| i | 1-bit data of immediate |
| V | 1-bit data of code specifying vector (indicates higher bits of vector) |
| v | 1-bit data of code specifying vector |
| cccc | 4-bit data for condition code specification (See **Table 6-4  Condition Codes**) |
| bbb | 3-bit data for bit number specification |
| L | 1-bit data of code specifying general-purpose register in register list |
| S | 1-bit data of code specifying EIPC/FEPC, EIPSW/FEPSW in register list |
| P | 1-bit data of code specifying PSW in register list |

**Table 6-4  Condition Codes**

| Condition Code (cccc) | Condition Name | Condition Formula |
|---|---|---|
| 0000 | V | OV = 1 |
| 1000 | NV | OV = 0 |
| 0001 | C/L | CY = 1 |
| 1001 | NC/NL | CY = 0 |
| 0010 | Z | Z = 1 |
| 1010 | NZ | Z = 0 |
| 0011 | NH | (CY or Z) = 1 |
| 1011 | H | (CY or Z) = 0 |
| 0100 | S/N | S = 1 |
| 1100 | NS/P | S = 0 |
| 0101 | T | Always (Unconditional) |
| 1101 | SA | SAT = 1 |
| 0110 | LT | (S xor OV) = 1 |
| 1110 | GE | (S xor OV) = 0 |
| 0111 | LE | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 1 |
| 1111 | GT | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 0 |

<Arithmetic instruction>

| ADD | Add register/immediate |
| --- | --- |
| | Add |

[Instruction format]   (1)   ADD  reg1, reg2

(2)   ADD  imm5, reg2

[Operation]   (1)   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] + GR [reg1]

(2)   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] + sign-extend (imm5)

[Format]   (1)   Format I

(2)   Format II

[Opcode]

```
      15                0
(1)   rrrrr001110RRRRR
      15                0
(2)   rrrrr010010iiiii
```

[Flags]   CY          "1" if a carry occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

OV          "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S           "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z           "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT         —

[Description]   (1)   Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the word data of general-purpose register reg2 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)   Adds the 5-bit immediate data, sign-extended to word length, to the word data of general-purpose register reg2 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2.

<Arithmetic instruction>

| | Add immediate |
|---|---|
| ADDI | |
| | Add immediate |

[Instruction format]    ADDI  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (imm16)

[Format]    Format VI

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31              16
rrrrr110000RRRRR iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii
```

[Flags]    CY    "1" if a carry occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

OV    "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S    "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z    "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise "0".

SAT    —

[Description]    Adds the 16-bit immediate data, sign-extended to word length, to the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

<Conditional Operation Instructions>

Add on condition flag

# ADF

Conditional add

[Instruction format]    ADF  cccc, reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]    if conditions are satisfied
then GR [reg3] ← GR [reg1] + GR [reg2] +1
else GR [reg3] ← GR [reg1] + GR [reg2] +0

[Format]    Format XI

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 31 | 16 |
|---|---|---|
| rrrrr111111RRRRR | wwwww011101cccc0 | |

[Flags]    CY    "1" if a carry occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".
OV    "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".
S    "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".
Z    "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".
SAT    —

[Description]    Adds 1 to the result of adding the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the word data of
general-purpose register reg2 and stores the result of addition in general-purpose register reg3, if
the condition specified as condition code "cccc" is satisfied.
If the condition specified as condition code "cccc" is not satisfied, the word data of general-purpose
register reg1 is added to the word data of general-purpose register reg2, and the result is stored in
general-purpose register reg3.
General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not affected. Designate one of the condition codes
shown in the following table as [cccc]. (cccc is not equal to 1101.)

| Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula | Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 | V | OV = 1 | 0100 | S/N | S = 1 |
| 1000 | NV | OV = 0 | 1100 | NS/P | S = 0 |
| 0001 | C/L | CY = 1 | 0101 | T | Always (Unconditional) |
| 1001 | NC/NL | CY = 0 | 0110 | LT | (S xor OV) = 1 |
| 0010 | Z | Z = 1 | 1110 | GE | (S xor OV) = 0 |
| 1010 | NZ | Z = 0 | 0111 | LE | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 1 |
| 0011 | NH | (CY or Z) = 1 | 1111 | GT | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 0 |
| 1011 | H | (CY or Z) = 0 | (1101) | Setting prohibited | |

<Logical instruction>

| AND | AND |
|---|---|
| | AND |

[Instruction format]    AND  reg1, reg2

[Operation]             GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] AND GR [reg1]

[Format]                Format I

[Opcode]
```
15                    0
rrrrr001010RRRRR
```

[Flags]        CY        —
               OV        0
               S         "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
               Z         "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".
               SAT       —

[Description]  ANDs the word data of general-purpose register reg2 with the word data of general-purpose register
               reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not
               affected.

<Logical instruction>

AND immediate

# ANDI

AND immediate

[Instruction format]    ANDI  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]             GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1] AND zero-extend (imm16)

[Format]                Format VI

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 | 31 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|
| rrrrr110110RRRRR | | iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii | |

[Flags]     CY      —
            OV      0
            S       "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
            Z       "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".
            SAT     —

[Description]    ANDs the word data of general-purpose register reg1 with the 16-bit immediate data, zero-extended
                to word length, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1
                is not affected.

RENESAS

<Branch instruction>

| Bcond | Branch on condition code with 9-bit displacement |
|---|---|
| | Conditional branch |

[Instruction format]    (1)    Bcond  disp9

                (2)    Bcond  disp17


[Operation]    (1)    if conditions are satisfied

                      then PC ← PC + sign-extend (disp9)

              (2)    if conditions are satisfied

                      then PC ← PC + sign-extend (disp17)


[Format]    (1)    Format III

              (2)    Format VII


[Opcode]

(1)

```
15                  0
ddddd1011dddcccc
```

dddddddd is the higher 8 bits of disp9.

cccc is the condition code of the condition indicated by cond (see **Table 6-5  Bcond Instructions**).

(2)

```
15              0 31              16
000000111111DCCCC dddddddddddddddd1
```

dddddddddddddddd is the higher 16 bits of disp17.

cccc is the condition code of the condition indicated by cond. (For details, see **Table 6-5  Bcond Instructions**.)


[Flags]    CY    —

         OV    —

         S     —

         Z     —

         SAT   —


[Description]    (1)    Checks each PSW flag specified by the instruction and branches if a condition is met; otherwise, executes the next instruction. The PC of branch destination is the sum of the current PC value and the 9-bit displacement (= 8-bit immediate data shifted by 1 and sign-extended to word length).

              (2)    Checks each PSW flag specified by the instruction and then adds the result of logically shifting the 16-bit immediate data 1 bit to the left and sign-extending it to word length to the current PC value if the conditions are satisfied. Control is then transferred. If the conditions are not satisfied, the system continues to the next instruction. BR (0101) cannot be specified as the condition code.

[Supplement]        Bit 0 of the 9-bit displacement is masked to "0". The current PC value used for calculation is the

address of the first byte of this instruction. The displacement value being "0" signifies that the branch

destination is the instruction itself.

**Table 6-5  Bcond Instructions**

| Instruction | | Condition Code (cccc) | Flag Status | Branch Condition |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Signed integer | BGE | 1110 | (S xor OV) = 0 | Greater than or equal to signed |
| | BGT | 1111 | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 0 | Greater than signed |
| | BLE | 0111 | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 1 | Less than or equal to signed |
| | BLT | 0110 | (S xor OV) = 1 | Less than signed |
| Unsigned integer | BH | 1011 | (CY or Z) = 0 | Higher (Greater than) |
| | BL | 0001 | CY = 1 | Lower (Less than) |
| | BNH | 0011 | (CY or Z) = 1 | Not higher (Less than or equal) |
| | BNL | 1001 | CY = 0 | Not lower (Greater than or equal) |
| Common | BE | 0010 | Z = 1 | Equal |
| | BNE | 1010 | Z = 0 | Not equal |
| Others | BC | 0001 | CY = 1 | Carry |
| | BF | 1010 | Z = 0 | False |
| | BN | 0100 | S = 1 | Negative |
| | BNC | 1001 | CY = 0 | No carry |
| | BNV | 1000 | OV = 0 | No overflow |
| | BNZ | 1010 | Z = 0 | Not zero |
| | BP | 1100 | S = 0 | Positive |
| | BR | 0101 | — | Always (Unconditional) Cannot be specified when using instruction format (2). |
| | BSA | 1101 | SAT = 1 | Saturated |
| | BT | 0010 | Z = 1 | True |
| | BV | 0000 | OV = 1 | Overflow |
| | BZ | 0010 | Z = 1 | Zero |

**Cautions**    1. The branch condition loses its meaning if a conditional branch instruction is executed on a
signed integer (BGE, BGT, BLE, or BLT) when the saturated operation instruction sets "1" to the
SAT flag. In normal operations, if an overflow occurs, the S flag is inverted ($0 \rightarrow 1$ or $1 \rightarrow 0$). This
is because the result is a negative value if it exceeds the maximum positive value and it is a
positive value if it exceeds the maximum negative value. However, when a saturated operation
instruction is executed, and if the result exceeds the maximum positive value, the result is
saturated with a positive value; if the result exceeds the maximum negative value, the result is
saturated with a negative value. Unlike the normal operation, the S flag is not inverted even if an
overflow occurs.

2. For Bcond disp17 (instruction format (2)), BR (0101) cannot be specified as the condition code.

<Data manipulation instruction>

|  | Bitfield Insert |
|---|---|
| BINS | |
| | Insert bit in register |

[Instruction format]    BINS  reg1, pos, width, reg2

[Operation]    GR [reg2] ← GR[reg2](31:width+pos) || GR[reg1](width-1:0) || GR[reg2](pos-1:0)

[Format]    Format IX

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31             16
rrrrr111111RRRRR MMMMK0001001LLL0      (msb ≥ 16, lsb ≥ 16)
15              0 31             16
rrrrr111111RRRRR MMMMK0001011LLL0      (msb ≥ 16, lsb < 16)
15              0 31             16
rrrrr111111RRRRR MMMMK0001101LLL0      (msb < 16, lsb < 16)
```

Most significant bit of field to be updated: msb = pos+width-1

Least significant bit of field to be updated: lsb = pos

MMMM = lower 4 bits of msb, KLLL = lower 4 bits of lsb

[Flags]
CY        —
OV        0
S         "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
Z         "1" if operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".
SAT       —

[Description]    Loads the lower width bits in general-purpose register reg1 and stores them from the bit position bit
pos + width −1 in the specified field in general-purpose register reg2 in bit pos. This instruction does
not affect any fields in general-purpose register reg2 except the specified field, nor does it affect
general-purpose register reg1.

[Supplement]    The most significant bit (msb: bit pos + width − 1) in the field in general-purpose register reg2 to be
updated and the least significant bit (lsb: bit pos) in this field are specified by using, respectively the
lower 4 bits, the MMMM and KLLL fields in the BINS instruction.
The lower 3 bits of the sub-opcode field (bits 23 to 21) differ depending on the msb and lsb values.
The operation is undefined if msb < lsb.

<Data manipulation instruction>

| | Byte swap halfword |
|---|---|
| **BSH** | |
| | Byte swap of halfword data |

[Instruction format]     BSH  reg2, reg3

[Operation]              GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] (23:16) || GR [reg2] (31:24) || GR [reg2] (7:0) || GR [reg2] (15:8)

[Format]                 Format XII

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31              16
rrrrr11111100000 wwwww01101000010
```

[Flags]          CY          "1" when there is at least one byte value of zero in the lower halfword of the operation

                 result; otherwise; "0".

                 OV          0

                 S           "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".

                 Z           "1" when lower halfword of operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

                 SAT         —

[Description]    Executes endian swap.

<Data manipulation instruction>

| BSW | Byte swap word |
| --- | --- |
| | Byte swap of word data |

[Instruction format]    BSW  reg2, reg3

[Operation]    GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] (7:0) || GR [reg2] (15:8) || GR [reg2] (23:16) || GR [reg2] (31:24)

[Format]    Format XII

[Opcode]

```
15                 0 31                16
rrrrr11111100000 wwwww01101000000
```

[Flags]    CY          "1" when there is at least one byte value of zero in the word data of the operation
result; otherwise; "0".
OV          0
S           "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
Z           "1" if operation result word data is "0"; otherwise, "0".
SAT         —

[Description]    Executes endian swap.

<Special instruction>

| CALLT | Call with table look up |
| | |
| | Subroutine call with table look up |

[Instruction format]    CALLT  imm6

[Operation]             CTPC ← PC + 2 (return PC)

                        CTPSW(4:0) ← PSW(4:0)

                        adr ← CTBP + zero-extend (imm6 logically shift left by 1)**Note**

                        PC ← CTBP + zero-extend (Load-memory (adr, Half-word) )

                        **Note**    An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]                Format II

[Opcode]

15                0

```
0000001000iiiiii
```

[Flags]     CY        —

            OV        —

            S         —

            Z         —

            SAT       —

[Description]           The following steps are taken.

                        (1)    Transfers the contents of both return PC and PSW to CTPC and CTPSW.

                        (2)    Adds the CTBP value to the 6-bit immediate data, logically left-shifted by 1, and zero-
                        extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit table entry address.

                        (3)    Loads the halfword entry data of the address generated in step (2) and zero-extend to word
                        length.

                        (4)    Adds the CTBP value to the data generated in step (3) to generate a 32-bit target address.

                        (5)    Jumps to the target address.

| Cautions | 1. When an exception occurs during CALLT instruction execution, the execution is aborted after the end of the read/write cycle. |
|---|---|
| | 2. Memory protection is performed when executing a memory read operation to read the CALLT instruction table. When memory protection is enabled, the data for generating a target address from a table allocated in an area to which access from a user program is prohibited cannot be loaded. |

<Special instruction>

| CAXI | Compare and exchange for interlock |
| --- | --- |
| | Comparison and swap |

[Instruction format]    CAXI  [reg1], reg2, reg3

[Operation]    adr ← GR[reg1]**Note**

token ← Load-memory (adr, Word)

result ← GR[reg2] − token

If result == 0

then    Store-memory (adr, GR[reg3], Word)

GR[reg3] ← token

else    Store-memory(adr, token, Word)

GR[reg3] ← token

**Note**    An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    Format XI

[Opcode]

| 15 | 031 | 16 |
| --- | --- | --- |

| rrrrr111111RRRRR | wwwww00011101110 |
| --- | --- |

[Flags]    CY        "1" if a borrow occurs in the *result* operation; otherwise, "0"

OV        "1" if overflow occurs in the *result* operation; otherwise, "0"

S          "1" if result is negative; otherwise, "0"

Z          "1" if result is 0; otherwise, "0"

SAT        —

[Description]        Word data is read from the specified address and compared with the word data in general-purpose

register reg2, and the result is indicated by flags in the PSW. Comparison is performed by

subtracting the read word data from the word data in general-purpose register reg2. If the

comparison result is "0", word data in general-purpose register reg3 is stored in the generated

address, otherwise the read word data is stored in the generated address. Afterward, the read word

data is stored in general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not

affected.

---

**Cautions** 1.   This instruction provides an atomic guarantee aimed at exclusive control, and during the period

between read and write operations, the target address is not affected by access due to any other

cause.

2.   The CAXI instruction is included for backward compatibility. If you are using a multi-core system

and require an atomic guarantee, use the LDL.W and STC.W instructions.

3.   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might

occur as a result of address calculation.

For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

<Special instruction>

|  | Clear Load Link |
| --- | --- |
| CLL | |
| | Clear atomic manipulation link |

[Instruction format]   CLL

[Operation]   LLbit ← 0

[Format]   Format X

[Opcode]

| 15 | 031 | 16 |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1111111111111111 | 1111000101100000 | |

[Flags]   CY   —
         OV   —
         S    —
         Z    —
         SAT  —

[Description]   This CPU does not have a CLL instruction, and if it is issued, handles it as a reserved instruction.

<Bit manipulation instruction>

Clear bit

## CLR1

Bit clear

[Instruction format]   (1)   CLR1  bit#3, disp16 [reg1]

(2)   CLR1  reg2, [reg1]

[Operation]   (1)   adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, bit#3) )

token ← clear-bit (token, bit#3)

Store-memory (adr, token, Byte)

(2)   adr ← GR [reg1]**Note**

token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, reg2) )

token ← clear-bit (token, reg2)

Store-memory (adr, token, Byte)

**Note**   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]   (1)   Format VIII

(2)   Format IX

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 31 | 16 |
|----|------|-----|

(1) | 10bbb111110RRRRR | dddddddddddddddd |

| 15 | 0 31 | 16 |
|----|------|-----|

(2) | rrrrr111111RRRRR | 0000000011100100 |

[Flags]   CY   —

OV   —

S   —

Z   "1" if bit specified by operand = "0", "0" if bit specified by operand = "1".

SAT   —

[Description]          (1)        Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-

extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address,

then the bits indicated by the 3-bit bit number are cleared (0) and the data is written back to the

original address.

(2)        Reads the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data

is read from the generated address, the bits indicated by the lower three bits of reg2 are cleared (0),

and the data is written back to the original address.

[Supplement]          The Z flag of PSW indicates the status of the specified bit (0 or 1) before this instruction is executed,

and does not indicate the content of the specified bit after this instruction is executed.

---

**Caution**   This instruction provides an atomic guarantee aimed at exclusive control, and during the period

between read and write operations, the target address is not affected by access due to any other

cause.

---

<Data manipulation instruction>

Conditional move

# CMOV

Conditional move

[Instruction format]     (1)     CMOV  cccc, reg1, reg2, reg3

                         (2)     CMOV  cccc, imm5, reg2, reg3

[Operation]              (1)     if conditions are satisfied

                          then GR [reg3] ← GR [reg1]

                          else GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2]

                         (2)     if conditions are satisfied

                          then GR [reg3] ← sign-extended (imm5)

                          else GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2]

[Format]                 (1)     Format XI

                         (2)     Format XII

[Opcode]                        15                0 31                16

                         (1)    | rrrrr111111RRRRR | wwwww011001cccc0 |

                                15                0 31                16

                         (2)    | rrrrr111111iiiii | wwwww011000cccc0 |

[Flags]           CY        —

                  OV        —

                  S         —

                  Z         —

                  SAT       —

[Description]     (1)     When the condition specified by condition code "cccc" is met, data in general-purpose register reg1 is transferred to general-purpose register reg3. When that condition is not met, data in general-purpose register reg2 is transferred to general-purpose register reg3. Specify one of the condition codes shown in the following table as "cccc".

| Condition code | Name | Condition formula | Condition code | Name | Condition formula |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 | V | OV = 1 | 0100 | S/N | S = 1 |
| 1000 | NV | OV = 0 | 1100 | NS/P | S = 0 |
| 0001 | C/L | CY = 1 | 0101 | T | Always (unconditional) |
| 1001 | NC/NL | CY = 0 | 1101 | SA | SAT = 1 |
| 0010 | Z | Z = 1 | 0110 | LT | (S xor OV) = 1 |
| 1010 | NZ | Z = 0 | 1110 | GE | (S xor OV) = 0 |
| 0011 | NH | (CY or Z) = 1 | 0111 | LE | ((S xor OV) or Z) = 1 |
| 1011 | H | (CY or Z) = 0 | 1111 | GT | ((S xor OV) or Z) = 0 |

(2)     When the condition specified by condition code "cccc" is met, 5-bit immediate data sign-extended to word-length is transferred to general-purpose register reg3. When that condition is not met, the data in general-purpose register reg2 is transferred to general-purpose register reg3. Specify one of the condition codes shown in the following table as "cccc".

| Condition code | Name | Condition formula | Condition code | Name | Condition formula |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 | V | OV = 1 | 0100 | S/N | S = 1 |
| 1000 | NV | OV = 0 | 1100 | NS/P | S = 0 |
| 0001 | C/L | CY = 1 | 0101 | T | Always (Unconditional) |
| 1001 | NC/NL | CY = 0 | 1101 | SA | SAT = 1 |
| 0010 | Z | Z = 1 | 0110 | LT | (S xor OV) = 1 |
| 1010 | NZ | Z = 0 | 1110 | GE | (S xor OV) = 0 |
| 0011 | NH | (CY or Z) = 1 | 0111 | LE | ((S xor OV) or Z) = 1 |
| 1011 | H | (CY or Z) = 0 | 1111 | GT | ((S xor OV) or Z) = 0 |

[Supplement]     See the description of the SETF instruction.

<Arithmetic instruction>

| CMP | Compare register/immediate (5-bit) |
|---|---|
| | Compare |

[Instruction format]    (1)    CMP  reg1, reg2

                        (2)    CMP  imm5, reg2


[Operation]             (1)    result ← GR [reg2] − GR [reg1]

                        (2)    result ← GR [reg2] − sign-extend (imm5)


[Format]                (1)    Format I

                        (2)    Format II


[Opcode]                       15                    0

                        (1)    `rrrrr001111RRRRR`

                               15                    0

                        (2)    `rrrrr010011iiiii`


[Flags]                 CY           "1" if a borrow occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

                        OV           "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

                        S            "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

                        Z            "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

                        SAT          —


[Description]           (1)    Compares the word data of general-purpose register reg2 with the word data of general-

                               purpose register reg1 and outputs the result through the PSW flags. Comparison is performed by

                               subtracting the reg1 contents from the reg2 word data. General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are

                               not affected.

                        (2)    Compares the word data of general-purpose register reg2 with the 5-bit immediate data, sign-

                               extended to word length, and outputs the result through the PSW flags. Comparison is performed by

                               subtracting the sign-extended immediate data from the reg2 word data. General-purpose register

                               reg2 is not affected.

<Special instruction>

|  | Return from CALLT |
|---|---|
| CTRET | |
| | Return from subroutine call |

[Instruction format]   CTRET

[Operation]   PC ← CTPC
PSW(4:0) ← CTPSW(4:0)

[Format]   Format X

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 | 31 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0000011111100000 | | 0000000101000100 | |

[Flags]   CY        Value read from CTPSW is set.

OV        Value read from CTPSW is set.

S          Value read from CTPSW is set.

Z          Value read from CTPSW is set.

SAT       Value read from CTPSW is set.

[Description]   Loads the return PC and PSW (the lower 5 bits) from the appropriate system register and returns

from a routine under CALLT instruction. The following steps are taken:

(1)      The return PC and the return PSW (the lower 5 bits) are loaded from the CTPC and CTPSW.

(2)      The values are restored in PC and PSW (the lower 5 bits) and the control is transferred to the

return address.

Caution   When the CTRET instruction is executed, only the lower 5 bits of the PSW register are updated; the
higher 27 bits retain their previous values.

<Special instruction>

| DI | Disable interrupt |
| | |
| | Disable EI level maskable exception |

[Instruction format]    DI

[Operation]             PSW.ID ← 1 (Disables EI level maskable interrupt)

[Format]                Format X

[Opcode]

| 15                0 | 31                16 |
| --- | --- |
| 0000011111100000 | 0000000101100000 |

[Flags]         CY          —
                OV          —
                S           —
                Z           —
                SAT         —
                ID          1

[Description]   Sets "1" to the ID flag of the PSW to disable the acknowledgement of EI level maskable exceptions
                after the execution of this instruction.

[Supplement]    Overwrite of flags in the PSW by this instruction becomes valid as of the next instruction.
                If the MCTL.UIC bit has been cleared to 0, this instruction is a supervisor-level instruction.
                If the MCTL.UIC bit has been set to 1, this instruction can always be executed.

<Special instruction>

| DISPOSE | Function dispose |
| | Stack frame deletion |

[Instruction format]    (1)    DISPOSE  imm5, list12

(2)    DISPOSE  imm5, list12, [reg1]

[Operation]    (1)    tmp ← sp + zero-extend (imm5 logically shift by 2)

foreach (all regs in list12) {

adr ← tmp[Notes 1, 2]

GR[reg in list12] ← Load-memory (adr, Word)

tmp ← tmp + 4

}

sp ← tmp

(2)    tmp ← sp + zero-extend (imm5 logically shift by 2)

foreach (all regs in list12) {

adr ← tmp[Notes 1, 2]

GR[reg in list12] ← Load-memory (adr, Word)

tmp ← tmp + 4

}

PC ← GR[reg1]

sp ← tmp

**Notes**  1. An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

2. When loading to memory, the lower 2 bits of adr are masked to 0.

[Format]    Format XIII

[Opcode]

```
     15              0 31            16
(1)  0000011001iiiiiL LLLLLLLLLLLL00000
     15              0 31            16
(2)  0000011001iiiiiL LLLLLLLLLLLLRRRRR
```

RRRRR ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg1.)

The values of LLLLLLLLLLLL are the corresponding bit values shown in register list "list12" (for

example, the "L" at bit 21 of the opcode corresponds to the value of bit 21 in list12).

list12 is a 32-bit register list, defined as follows.

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 ... 1 | 0 |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|-----|
| r24 | r25 | r26 | r27 | r20 | r21 | r22 | r23 | r28 | r29 | r31 | -- | r30 |

Bits 31 to 21 and bit 0 correspond to general-purpose registers (r20 to r31), so that when any of these bits is set (1), it specifies a corresponding register operation as a processing target. For example, when r20 and r30 are specified, the values in list12 appear as shown below (register bits that do not correspond, i.e., bits 20 to 1 are set as "Don't care").

- When all of the register's non-corresponding bits are "0": 08000001H
- When all of the register's non-corresponding bits are "1": 081FFFFFH

[Flags]        CY        —

               OV        —

               S         —

               Z         —

               SAT       —

[Description]   (1)    Adds the 5-bit immediate data, logically left-shifted by 2 and zero-extended to word length, to sp; returns to general-purpose registers listed in list12 by loading the data from the address specified by sp and adds 4 to sp.

(2)    Adds the 5-bit immediate data, logically left-shifted by 2 and zero-extended to word length, to sp; returns to general-purpose registers listed in list12 by loading the data from the address specified by sp and adds 4 to sp; and transfers the control to the address specified by general-purpose register reg1.

[Supplement]   General-purpose registers in list12 are loaded in descending order (r31, r30, ... r20). The imm5 restores a stack frame for automatic variables and temporary data. The lower 2 bits of the address specified by sp is always masked to "0" and aligned to the word boundary.

---

**Cautions**  1.  If an exception occurs while this instruction is being executed, execution of the instruction might be stopped after the read/write cycle and the register value write operation are completed, but sp will retain its original value from before the start of execution. The instruction will be executed again later, after a return from the exception.

2.  For instruction format (2) DISPOSE imm5, list12, [reg1], do not specify r0 for reg1.

---

<Divide instruction>

| DIV | Divide word |
|-----|-------------|
|     | Division of (signed) word data |

[Instruction format]   DIV  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] ÷ GR [reg1]

GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] % GR [reg1]

[Format]   Format XI

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 31 | 16 |
|----|------|----|
| rrrrr111111RRRRR | wwwww01011000000 | |

[Flags]   CY   —

OV   "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S   "1" if the operation result quotient is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z   "1" if the operation result quotient is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT   —

[Description]   Divides the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the quotient to general-purpose register reg2 with the remainder set to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected. When division by zero occurs, an overflow results and all operation results except for the OV flag are undefined.

[Supplement]   Overflow occurs when the maximum negative value (80000000H) is divided by −1 with the quotient = 80000000H and when the data is divided by 0 with quotient being undefined.

If reg2 and reg3 are the same register, the remainder is stored in that register.

When an exception occurs during the DIV instruction execution, the execution is aborted to process the exception. The execution resumes at the original instruction address upon returning from the exception. General-purpose register reg1 and general-purpose register reg2 retain their values prior to execution of this instruction.

---

**Caution**   If general-purpose registers reg2 and reg3 are specified as being the same register, the operation result quotient is not stored in reg2, so the flag is undefined.

---

<Divide instruction>

| DIVH | Divide halfword |
| | Division of (signed) halfword data |

[Instruction format]     (1)     DIVH  reg1, reg2

                         (2)     DIVH  reg1, reg2, reg3


[Operation]              (1)     GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] ÷ sign-extend( GR [reg1](15:0) )

                         (2)     GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] ÷ sign-extend( GR [reg1](15:0) )

                                 GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] % sign-extend( GR [reg1](15:0) )


[Format]                 (1)     Format I

                         (2)     Format XI


[Opcode]                         15                    0

                         (1)     ```rrrrr000010RRRRR```

                         RRRRR ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg1.)

                         rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

                                 15                    0 31               16

                         (2)     ```rrrrr111111RRRRR|wwwww01010000000```


[Flags]                  CY             —

                         OV             "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

                         S              "1" if the operation result quotient is negative; otherwise, "0".

                         Z              "1" if the operation result quotient is "0"; otherwise, "0".

                         SAT            —


[Description]            (1)     Divides the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by the lower halfword data of general-
                                 purpose register reg1 and stores the quotient to general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose
                                 register reg1 is not affected. When division by zero occurs, an overflow results and all operation
                                 results except for the OV flag are undefined.

                         (2)     Divides the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by the lower halfword data of general-
                                 purpose register reg1 and stores the quotient to general-purpose register reg2 with the remainder
                                 set to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected. When division by
                                 zero occurs, an overflow results and all operation results except for the OV flag are undefined.

[Supplement] (1) The remainder is not stored. Overflow occurs when the maximum negative value (80000000H) is divided by −1 with the quotient = 80000000H and when the data is divided by 0 with quotient being undefined.

When an exception occurs during the DIVH instruction execution, the execution is aborted to process the exception. The execution resumes at the original instruction address upon returning from the exception. General-purpose register reg1 and general-purpose register reg2 retain their values prior to execution of this instruction.

(2) Overflow occurs when the maximum negative value (80000000H) is divided by −1 with the quotient = 80000000H and when the data is divided by 0 with quotient being undefined.

If reg2 and reg3 are the same register, the remainder is stored in that register.

When an exception occurs during the DIVH instruction execution, the execution is aborted to process the exception. The execution resumes at the original instruction address upon returning from the exception. General-purpose register reg1 and general-purpose register reg2 retain their values prior to execution of this instruction.

---

Cautions 1. If general-purpose registers reg2 and reg3 are specified as being the same register, the operation result quotient is not stored in reg2, so the flag is undefined.
2. Do not specify r0 as reg1 and reg2 for DIVH reg1 and reg2 in instruction format (1).

---

<Divide instruction>

| DIVHU | Divide halfword unsigned |
|---|---|
| | Division of (unsigned) halfword data |

[Instruction format]    DIVHU  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] ÷ zero-extend( GR [reg1](15:0) )

GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] % zero-extend( GR [reg1](15:0) )

[Format]    Format XI

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31              16
rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww01010000010
```

[Flags]    CY          —

OV          "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S           "1" when the operation result quotient word data is "1"; otherwise, "0"

Z           "1" if the operation result quotient is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT         —

[Description]    Divides the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by the lower halfword data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the quotient to general-purpose register reg2 with the remainder set to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected. When division by zero occurs, an overflow results and all operation results except for the OV flag are undefined.

[Supplement]    Overflow occurs by division by zero (with the operation result being undefined).

If reg2 and reg3 are the same register, the remainder is stored in that register.

When an exception occurs during the DIVHU instruction execution, the execution is aborted to process the exception. The execution resumes at the original instruction address upon returning from the exception. General-purpose register reg1 and general-purpose register reg2 retain their values prior to execution of this instruction.

| Caution | If general-purpose registers reg2 and reg3 are specified as being the same register, the operation result quotient is not stored in reg2, so the flag is undefined. |
|---|---|

<High-speed divide instructions>

| DIVQ | Divide word quickly |
| --- | --- |
| | Division of (signed) word data (variable steps) |

[Instruction format]   DIVQ  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] ÷ GR [reg1]
GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] % GR [reg1]

[Format]   Format XI

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 31 | 16 |
| --- | --- | --- |
| rrrrr111111RRRRR | wwwww01011111100 | |

[Flags]   CY          —

OV          "1" when overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S           "1" when operation result quotient is a negative value; otherwise, "0".

Z           "1" when operation result quotient is a "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT         —

[Description]   Divides the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by the word data in general-purpose register reg1, stores the quotient in reg2, and stores the remainder in general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

The minimum number of steps required for division is determined from the values in reg1 and reg2, then this operation is executed. When division by zero occurs, an overflow results and all operation results except for the OV flag are undefined.

[Supplement]   (1)    Overflow occurs when the maximum negative value (80000000H) is divided by −1 (with the quotient = 80000000H) and when the data is divided by 0 with the quotient being undefined.

If reg2 and reg3 are the same register, the remainder is stored in that register.

When an exception occurs during execution of this instruction, the execution is aborted. After exception handling is completed, the execution resumes at the original instruction address when returning from the exception. General-purpose register reg1 and general-purpose register reg2 retain their values prior to execution of this instruction.

(2)    The smaller the difference in the number of valid bits between reg1 and reg2, the smaller the number of execution cycles. In most cases, the number of instruction cycles is smaller than that of the ordinary division instruction. If data of 16-bit integer type is divided by another 16-bit integer type data, the difference in the number of valid bits is 15 or less, and the operation is completed within 20 cycles.

| **Cautions** | 1. If general-purpose registers reg2 and reg3 are specified as being the same register, the operation result quotient is not stored in reg2, so the flag is undefined. |
| | 2. For the accurate number of execution cycles, see the appendix. |
| | 3. If the number of execution cycles must always be constant to guarantee real-time features, use the ordinary division instruction. |

<High-speed divide instructions>

---

## DIVQU

Divide word unsigned quickly

Division of (unsigned) word data (variable steps)

---

[Instruction format]    DIVQU  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]             GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] ÷ GR [reg1]

                        GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] % GR [reg1]

[Format]                Format XI

[Opcode]

| 15              0 | 31              16 |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| rrrrr111111RRRRR  | wwwww01011111110   |

[Flags]     CY      —

            OV      "1" when overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

            S       "1" when operation result quotient is a negative value; otherwise, "0".

            Z       "1" when operation result quotient is a "0"; otherwise, "0".

            SAT     —

[Description]   Divides the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by the word data in general-purpose register

                reg1, stores the quotient in reg2, and stores the remainder in general-purpose register reg3.

                General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

                The minimum number of steps required for division is determined from the values in reg1 and reg2,

                then this operation is executed.

                When division by zero occurs, an overflow results and all operation results except for the OV flag are

                undefined.

[Supplement]    (1)     An overflow occurs when there is division by zero (the operation result is undefined).

                If reg2 and reg3 are the same register, the remainder is stored in that register.

                When an exception occurs during execution of this instruction, the execution is aborted. After

                exception handling is completed, using the return address as this instruction's start address, the

                execution resumes when returning from the exception. General-purpose register reg1 and general-

                purpose register reg2 retain their values prior to execution of this instruction.

                (2)     The smaller the difference in the number of valid bits between reg1 and reg2, the smaller the

                number of execution cycles. In most cases, the number of instruction cycles is smaller than that of

                the ordinary division instruction. If data of 16-bit integer type is divided by another 16-bit integer type

                data, the difference in the number of valid bits is 15 or less, and the operation is completed within 20

                cycles.

| **Cautions** | 1. If general-purpose registers reg2 and reg3 are specified as being the same register, the operation result quotient is not stored in reg2, so the flag is undefined. |
| | 2. For the accurate number of execution cycles, see the appendix. |
| | 3. If the number of execution cycles must always be constant to guarantee real-time features, use the ordinary division instruction. |

<Divide instruction>

| DIVU | Divide word unsigned |
| --- | --- |
| | Division of (unsigned) word data |

[Instruction format]     DIVU  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]     GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] ÷ GR [reg1]

GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] % GR [reg1]

[Format]     Format XI

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31              16
rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww01011000010
```

[Flags]     CY          —

OV          "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S           "1" when operation result quotient word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".

Z           "1" if the operation result quotient is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT         —

[Description]     Divides the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the quotient to general-purpose register reg2 with the remainder set to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

When division by zero occurs, an overflow results and all operation results except for the OV flag are undefined.

[Supplement]     When an exception occurs during the DIVU instruction execution, the execution is aborted to process the exception.

If reg2 and reg3 are the same register, the remainder is stored in that register.

The execution resumes at the original instruction address upon returning from the exception.

General-purpose register reg1 and general-purpose register reg2 retain their values prior to execution of this instruction.

**Caution**   If general-purpose registers reg2 and reg3 are specified as being the same register, the operation result quotient is not stored in reg2, so the flag is undefined.

<Special instruction>

| EI | Enable interrupt |
| --- | --- |
| | Enable EI level maskable exception |

[Instruction format]    EI

[Operation]    PSW.ID ← 0 (enables EI level maskable exception)

[Format]    Format X

[Opcode]

| 15              0 | 31           16 |
| --- | --- |
| 1000011111100000 | 0000000101100000 |

[Flags]    CY    —
          OV    —
          S     —
          Z     —
          SAT   —
          ID    0

[Description]    Clears the ID flag of the PSW to "0" and enables the acknowledgement of maskable exceptions
                starting the next instruction.

[Supplement]    If the MCTL.UIC bit has been cleared to 0, this instruction is a supervisor-level instruction.
               If the MCTL.UIC bit has been set to 1, this instruction can always be executed.

<Special instruction>

| EIRET | Return from trap or interrupt |
|---|---|
|  | Return from EL level exception |

[Instruction format]   EIRET

[Operation]   PC ← EIPC
              PSW ← EIPSW

[Format]   Format X

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 | 31 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0000011111100000 | | 0000000101001000 | |

[Flags]   CY        Value read from EIPSW is set
          OV        Value read from EIPSW is set
          S         Value read from EIPSW is set
          Z         Value read from EIPSW is set
          SAT       Value read from EIPSW is set

[Description]   Returns execution from an EI level exception. The return PC and PSW are loaded from the EIPC and EIPSW registers and set in the PC and PSW, and control is passed.
If EP = 0, it means that interrupt (EIINT*n*) processing has finished, so the corresponding bit of the ISPR register is cleared.

[Supplement]   This instruction is a supervisor-level instruction.

<Special instruction>

| FERET | Return from trap or interrupt |
|---|---|
| | Return from FE level exception |

[Instruction format]     FERET

[Operation]               PC ← FEPC
                          PSW ← FEPSW

[Format]                  Format X

[Opcode]

```
15                 0 31                16
0000011111100000 0000000101001010
```

[Flags]            CY        Value read from FEPSW is set
                   OV        Value read from FEPSW is set
                   S         Value read from FEPSW is set
                   Z         Value read from FEPSW is set
                   SAT       Value read from FEPSW is set

[Description]      Returns execution from an FE level exception. The return PC and PSW are loaded from the FEPC
                   and FEPSW registers and set in the PC and PSW, and control is passed.

[Supplement]       This instruction is a supervisor-level instruction.

---

**Caution**   The FERET instruction can also be used as a hazard barrier instruction when the CPU's operating
status (PSW) is changed by a control program such as the OS. Use the FERET instruction to clarify
the program blocks on which to effect the hardware function associated with the UM bit in the PSW
when these bits are changed to accord with the mounted CPU. The hardware function that operates
in accordance with the PSW value updated by the FERET instruction is guaranteed to be effected
from the instruction indicated by the return address of the FERET instruction.

---

<Special instruction>

| | FE-level Trap |
|---|---|
| FETRAP | |
| | FE level software exception |

[Instruction format]   FETRAP   vector4

[Operation]   FEPC ← PC + 2 (return PC)

FEPSW ← PSW

FEIC ← exception cause code[Note 1]

PSW.UM ← 0

PSW.NP ← 1

PSW.EP ← 1

PSW.ID ← 1

PC ← exception handler address[Note 2]

Notes   1.  See **Table 4-1  Exception Cause List**.

2.  See **4.5  Exception Handler Address**.

[Format]   Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
0vvvv00001000000
```

Where vvvv is vector4.

Do not set 0H to vector4 (vvvv ≠ 0000).

[Flags]   CY   —

OV   —

S   —

Z   —

SAT   —

[Description]       Saves the contents of the return PC (address of the instruction next to the FETRAP instruction) and
the current contents of the PSW to FEPC and FEPSW, respectively, stores the exception cause
code in the FEIC register, and updates the PSW according to the exception causes listed in **Table 4-
1**. Execution then branches to the exception handler address and exception handling is started.
**Table 6-6** shows the correspondence between vector4 and exception cause codes and exception
handler address offset. Exception handler addresses are calculated based on the offset addresses
listed in **Table 6-6**. For details, see **4.5   Exception Handler Address**.

**Table 6-6  Correspondence between vector4 and Exception Cause Codes**
**and Exception Handler Address Offset**

| vector4 | Exception Cause Code | Offset Address |
|---------|----------------------|----------------|
| 00H | Not specifiable | |
| 01H | 00000031H | 30H |
| 02H | 00000032H | |
| ... | | |
| 0FH | 0000003FH | |

<Special instruction>

| | Halt |
|---|---|
| HALT | |
| | Halt |

[Instruction format]    HALT

[Operation]    Places the CPU core in the HALT state.

[Format]    Format X

[Opcode]

| 15                    0 | 31                    16 |
|---|---|
| 0000011111100000 | 0000000100100000 |

[Flags]    CY    —
OV    —
S    —
Z    —
SAT    —

[Description]    Places the CPU core that executed the HALT instruction in the HALT state.

Occurrence of the HALT state release request will return the system to normal execution status.

If an exception is acknowledged while the system is in HALT state, the return PC of that exception is the PC of the instruction that follows the HALT instruction.

The HALT state is released under the following condition.
- A terminating exception occurs

Even if the conditions for acknowledging the above exceptions are not satisfied (due to the ID or NP value), as long as a HALT mode release request exists, HALT state is released (for example, even if PSW.ID = 1, HALT state is released when INT0 occurs).

Note, however, that the HALT mode will not be released if terminating exceptions are masked by the following mask settings, which are defined individually for each function:
- Terminating exceptions are masked by an interrupt channel mask setting specified by the interrupt controller[Note].
- Terminating exceptions are masked by a mask setting defined by a hardware function other than the above.

Note    This does not include masking specified by the ISPR and PMR registers.

[Supplement]    This instruction is a supervisor-level instruction.

<Data manipulation instructions>

| | Halfword swap halfword |
|---|---|
| **HSH** | |
| | Halfword swap of halfword data |

[Instruction format]    HSH  reg2, reg3

[Operation]    GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2]

[Format]    Format XII

[Opcode]

| 15                0 | 31              16 |
|---|---|
| rrrrr11111100000 | wwwww01101000110 |

[Flags]    CY         "1" if the lower halfword of the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

OV         0

S          "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".

Z          "1" if the lower halfword of the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT        —

[Description]    Stores the content of general-purpose register reg2 in general-purpose register reg3, and stores the flag judgment result in PSW.

<Data manipulation instruction>

| | Halfword swap word |
|---|---|
| **HSW** | |
| | Halfword swap of word data |

[Instruction format]    HSW  reg2, reg3

[Operation]    GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] (15:0) ‖ GR [reg2] (31:16)

[Format]    Format XII

[Opcode]

| 15                0 | 31              16 |
|---|---|
| rrrrr11111100000 | wwwww01101000100 |

[Flags]    CY        "1" when there is at least one halfword of zero in the word data of the operation result;
             otherwise; "0".
           OV        0
           S         "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
           Z         "1" if operation result word data is "0"; otherwise, "0".
           SAT       —

[Description]    Executes endian swap.

<Branch instruction>

| JARL | Jump and register link |
|------|------------------------|
|      | Branch and register link |

[Instruction format]   (1)    JARL  disp22, reg2

(2)    JARL  disp32, reg1

(3)    JARL  [reg1], reg3

[Operation]   (1)    GR [reg2] ← PC + 4

PC ← PC + sign-extend (disp22)

(2)    GR [reg1] ← PC + 6

PC ← PC + disp32

(3)    GR[reg3] ← PC + 4

PC ← GR[reg1]

[Format]   (1)    Format V

(2)    Format VI

(3)    Format XI

[Opcode]

```
      15              0 31              16
(1)  rrrrr11110dddddd dddddddddddddddd0
```

dddddddddddddddddddd is the higher 21 bits of disp22.

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

```
      15              0 31              16 47              32
(2)  00000010111RRRRR dddddddddddddddd0 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
```

DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDddddddddddddddddddd is the higher 31 bits of disp32.

RRRRR ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg1.)

```
      15              0 31              16
(3)  11000111111RRRRR WWWWW00101100000
```

WWWWW ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg3.)

[Flags]   CY      —

OV      —

S       —

Z       —

SAT     —

[Description]         (1)      Saves the current PC value + 4 in general-purpose register reg2, adds the 22-bit

                     displacement data, sign-extended to word length, to PC; stores the value in and transfers the control

                     to PC. Bit 0 of the 22-bit displacement is masked to "0".

                     (2)      Saves the current PC value + 6 in general-purpose register reg1, adds the 32-bit

                     displacement data to PC and stores the value in and transfers the control to PC. Bit 0 of the 32-bit

                     displacement is masked to "0".

                     (3)      Stores the current PC value + 4 in reg3, specifies the contents of reg1 for the PC value, and

                     then transfers the control.


[Supplement]          The current PC value used for calculation is the address of the first byte of this instruction itself. The

                     jump destination is this instruction with the displacement value = 0. JARL instruction corresponds to

                     the call function of the subroutine control instruction, and saves the return PC address in either reg1

                     or reg2. JMP instruction corresponds to the return function of the subroutine control instruction, and

                     can be used to specify general-purpose register containing the return address as reg1 to the return

                     PC.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Caution** | Do not specify r0 for the general-purpose register reg2 in the instruction format (1) JARL disp22, reg2. |
| | Do not specify r0 for the general-purpose register reg1 in the instruction format (2) JARL disp32, reg1. |
| | Do not specify r0 for the general-purpose register reg3 in the instruction format (3) JARL [reg1], reg3. |

<Branch instruction>

| | Jump register |
|---|---|
| JMP | |
| | Unconditional branch (register relative) |

[Instruction format]    (1)    JMP  [reg1]

(2)    JMP  disp32 [reg1]

[Operation]    (1)    PC ← GR [reg1]

(2)    PC ← GR [reg1] + disp32

[Format]    (1)    Format I

(2)    Format VI

[Opcode]

```
        15                0
(1)    00000000011RRRRR
```

```
        15              0 31            16 47              32
(2)    00000110111RRRRR dddddddddddddddd0 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
```

DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDddddddddddddddddd is the higher 31 bits of disp32.

[Flags]    CY    —

OV    —

S    —

Z    —

SAT    —

[Description]    (1)    Transfers the control to the address specified by general-purpose register reg1. Bit 0 of the address is masked to "0".

(2)    Adds the 32-bit displacement to general-purpose register reg1, and transfers the control to the resulting address. Bit 0 of the address is masked to "0".

[Supplement]    Using this instruction as the subroutine control instruction requires the return PC to be specified by general-purpose register reg1.

<Branch instruction>

| JR | Jump relative |
| --- | --- |
| | Unconditional branch (PC relative) |

[Instruction format]　(1)　JR  disp22

　　　　　　　　　　(2)　JR  disp32

[Operation]　　　　(1)　PC ← PC + sign-extend (disp22)

　　　　　　　　　　(2)　PC ← PC + disp32

[Format]　　　　　　(1)　Format V

　　　　　　　　　　(2)　Format VI

[Opcode]

```
15                  0 31              16
```
(1) `0000011110dddddd dddddddddddddddd0`

　　`ddddddddddddddddddddd` is the higher 21 bits of disp22.

```
15                  0 31              16 47              32
```
(2) `0000001011100000 dddddddddddddddd0 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD`

　　`DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDddddddddddddddd` is the higher 31 bits of disp32.

[Flags]　　　CY　　　—

　　　　　　　OV　　　—

　　　　　　　S　　　　—

　　　　　　　Z　　　　—

　　　　　　　SAT　　 —

[Description]　　(1)　Adds the 22-bit displacement data, sign-extended to word length, to the current PC and stores

　　　　　　　the value in and transfers the control to PC. Bit 0 of the 22-bit displacement is masked to "0".

　　　　　　　(2)　Adds the 32-bit displacement data to the current PC and stores the value in PC and transfers

　　　　　　　the control to PC. Bit 0 of the 32-bit displacement is masked to "0".

[Supplement]　　The current PC value used for calculation is the address of the first byte of this instruction itself. The

　　　　　　　displacement value being "0" signifies that the branch destination is the instruction itself.

<Load instruction>

---

LD.B

Load byte

Load of (signed) byte data

---

[Instruction format]    (1)    LD.B  disp16 [reg1] , reg2

(2)    LD.B  disp23 [reg1] , reg3

[Operation]    (1)    adr ←  GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

GR [reg2] ← sign-extend (Load-memory (adr, Byte) )

(2)    adr ←  GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)**Note**

GR [reg3] ← sign-extend (Load-memory (adr, Byte) )

**Note**    An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    (1)    Format VII

(2)    Format XIV

[Opcode]

```
        15              031              16
(1)  rrrrr111000RRRRR dddddddddddddddd
```

```
        15              031             1647              32
(2)  00000111100RRRRR wwwwwddddddd0101 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
```

Where `RRRRR` = reg1, `wwwww` = reg3.

`ddddddd` is the lower side bits 6 to 1 of disp23.

`DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD` is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]    CY          —

OV          —

S           —

Z           —

SAT         —

[Description]    (1)    Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-
extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address,
sign-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg2.

(2)    Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-
extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address,
sign-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg3.

<Load instruction>

---

LD.BU

Load byte unsigned

Load of (unsigned) byte data

---

[Instruction format]     (1)     LD.BU  disp16 [reg1] , reg2

                         (2)     LD.BU  disp23 [reg1] , reg3

[Operation]              (1)     adr ←  GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

                                 GR [reg2] ← zero-extend (Load-memory (adr, Byte) )

                         (2)     adr ←  GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)**Note**

                                 GR [reg3] ← zero-extend (Load-memory (adr, Byte) )

    **Note**   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]                 (1)     Format VII

                         (2)     Format XIV

[Opcode]                         15                031              16

                         (1)     | rrrrr11110bRRRRR | ddddddddddddddd1 |
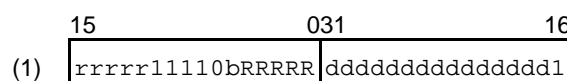
                         ddddddddddddddd is the higher 15 bits of disp16, and b is bit 0 of disp16.

                         rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

                                 15                031              1647              32

                         (2)     | 00000111101RRRRR | wwwwwddddddd0101 | DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD |

                          Where RRRRR = reg1, wwwww = reg3.

                         ddddddd is the lower 7 bits of disp23.

                         DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]                  CY           —

                         OV           —

                         S            —

                         Z            —

                         SAT          —

[Description]            (1)     Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-

                                 extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address,

                                 zero-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg2.

                         (2)     Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-

                                 extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address,

                                 zero-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg3.

---

**Caution**    Do not specify r0 for reg2.

<Load instruction>

| | Load Double Word |
|---|---|
| **LD.DW** | |
| | Load of doubleword data |

[Instruction format]      LD.DW  disp23[reg1], reg3

[Operation]      adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)**Note**

data ← Load-memory (adr, Double-word)

GR [reg3 + 1] || GR [reg3] ← data

**Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]      Format XIV

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 31 | 16 47 | 32 |
|---|---|---|---|
| 00000111101RRRRR | wwwwwdddddd01001 | DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD | |

Where RRRRR = reg1, wwwww = reg3.

dddddd is the lower side bits 6 to 1 of disp23.

DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]      CY      —

OV      —

S      —

Z      —

SAT      —

[Description]      Generates a 32-bit address by adding a 23-bit displacement value sign-extended to word length to
the word data of general-purpose register reg1. Doubleword data is read from the generated 32-bit
address and the lower 32 bits are stored in general-purpose register reg3, and the higher 32 bits in
reg3 + 1.

[Supplement]      reg3 must be an even-numbered register.

| Cautions 1. | According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might occur as a result of address calculation. <br> For details, see the hardware manual of the product used. |
|---|---|
| 2. | However, a misaligned access exception will not occur if the result of address calculation has a word boundary. |

<Load instruction>

| | Load halfword |
|---|---|
| **LD.H** | |
| | Load of (unsigned) halfword data |

[Instruction format]    (1)    LD.H  disp16 [reg1] , reg2

(2)    LD.H  disp23 [reg1] , reg3

[Operation]    (1)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

GR [reg2] ← sign-extend (Load-memory (adr, Halfword) )

(2)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)**Note**

GR [reg3] ← sign-extend (Load-memory (adr, Halfword) )

**Note**    An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    (1)    Format VII

(2)    Format XIV

[Opcode]

```
            15              031              16
(1)    rrrrr111001RRRRR dddddddddddddddd0
```

Where dddddddddddddddd is the higher 15 bits of disp16.

```
            15              031              1647             32
(2)    00000111100RRRRR wwwwwdddddd00111 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
```

Where RRRRR = reg1, wwwww = reg3.

dddddd is the lower side bits 6 to 1 of disp23.

DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]    CY    —

OV    —

S     —

Z     —

SAT    —

[Description]    (1)    Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-
extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Halfword data is read from this 32-bit address,
sign-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg2.

(2)    Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-
extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Halfword data is read from this 32-bit address,
sign-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg3.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might

occur as a result of address calculation.

For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Load instruction>

| | |
|---|---|
| | Load halfword unsigned |
| **LD.HU** | |
| | Load of (signed) halfword data |

[Instruction format]    (1)    LD.HU  disp16 [reg1] , reg2

(2)    LD.HU  disp23 [reg1] , reg3

[Operation]    (1)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

GR [reg2] ← zero-extend (Load-memory (adr, Halfword) )

(2)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)**Note**

GR [reg3] ← zero-extend (Load-memory (adr, Halfword) )

**Note**    An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    (1)    Format VII

(2)    Format XIV

[Opcode]

```
         15              031              16
(1)  rrrrr111111RRRRR dddddddddddddddd1
```

Where `dddddddddddddddd` is the higher 15 bits of disp16.

`rrrrr` ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

```
         15              031              1647              32
(2)  00000111101RRRRR wwwwwdddddd00111 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
```

Where `RRRRR` = reg1, `wwwww` = reg3.

`dddddd` is the lower side bits 6 to1 of disp23.

`DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD` is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]    CY        —

OV        —

S         —

Z         —

SAT       —

[Description]        (1)      Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-
extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Halfword data is read from this 32-bit address,
zero-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg2.

(2)      Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-
extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Halfword data is read from this address,
zero-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg3.

---

**Cautions** 1.   Do not specify r0 for reg2.

2.   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might
occur as a result of address calculation.
For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

<Load instruction>

| | Load word |
|---|---|
| **LD.W** | |
| | Load of word data |

[Instruction format]    (1)    LD.W  disp16 [reg1] , reg2

(2)    LD.W  disp23 [reg1] , reg3

[Operation]    (1)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)[Note]

GR [reg2] ← Load-memory (adr, Word)

(2)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)[Note]

GR [reg3] ← Load-memory (adr, Word)

**Note**    An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    (1)    Format VII

(2)    Format XIV

[Opcode]

```
       15              031            16
(1)  rrrrr111001RRRRR ddddddddddddddd1
```

Where `ddddddddddddddd` is the higher 15 bits of disp16.

```
       15              031            1647           32
(2)  00000111100RRRRR wwwwwdddddd01001 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
```

Where `RRRRR` = reg1, `wwwww` = reg3.

`dddddd` is the lower side bits 6 to 1 of disp23.

`DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD` is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]    CY        —

OV        —

S         —

Z         —

SAT       —

[Description]    (1)    Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Word data is read from this 32-bit address, and stored in general-purpose register reg2.

(2)    Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Word data is read from this address, and stored in general-purpose register reg3.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might

occur as a result of address calculation.

For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Special instruction>

| | Load Linked |
|---|---|
| **LDL.W** | |
| | Load to start atomic word data manipulation |

[Instruction format]      LDL.W  [reg1], reg3

[Operation]      adr ← GR[reg1]**Note 1**

GR[reg3] ← Load-memory (adr, Word)

**Note** 1.      An MAE, MDP, or DTLBE exception might occur depending on the result of address

calculation.

[Format]      Format VII

[Opcode]

| 15                0 | 31                16 |
|---|---|
| 00000111111RRRRR | wwwww01101111000 |

[Flags]      CY      —

OV      —

S        —

Z        —

SAT      —

[Description]      If issued, the CPU handles this instruction as the LD.W instruction.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might

occur as a result of address calculation.

For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Special instruction>

| LDSR | Load to system register |
| --- | --- |
| | Load to system register |

[Instruction format]    LDSR  reg2, regID, selID

LDSR  reg2, regID

[Operation]    SR [regID, selID] ← GR [reg2]**Note**

   **Note**    An exception might occur depending on the access permission. For details, see **2.5.3 Register Updating**.

[Format]    Format IX

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31             16
rrrrr111111RRRRR sssss00000100000
```

rrrrr: regID, sssss: selID, RRRRR: reg2

[Flags]    CY    —

OV    —

S    —

Z    —

SAT    —

[Description]    Loads the word data of general-purpose register reg2 to the system register specified by the system register number and group number (regID, selID). General-purpose register reg2 is not affected. If selID is omitted, it is assumed that selID is 0.

[Supplement]    A PIE or UCPOP exception might occur as a result of executing this instruction, depending on the combination of CPU operating mode and system register to be accessed. For details, see **2.5.3 Register Updating**.

**Cautions** 1.   In this instruction, general-purpose register reg2 is used as the source register, but, for mnemonic description convenience, the general-purpose register reg1 field is used in the opcode. The meanings of the register specifications in the mnemonic descriptions and opcode therefore differ from those of other instructions.

2.   The system register number or group number is a unique number used to identify each system register. How to access undefined registers is described in **2.5.4  Accessing Undefined Registers**, but accessing undefined registers is not recommended.

<Loop instruction>

LOOP

Loop

[Instruction format]    LOOP  reg1,disp16

[Operation]    GR[reg1] ← GR[reg1] + (-1)**Note**

if (GR[reg1] != 0)

then

 PC ← PC - zero-extend (disp16)

**Note**    −1 (0xFFFFFFFF) is added. The carry flag is updated in the same way as when the ADD

instruction is executed.

[Format]    Format VII

[Opcode]

```
15                  0 31              16
00000110111RRRRR ddddddddddddddd1
```

Where ddddddddddddddd is the higher 15 bits of disp16.

[Flags]    CY    "1" if a carry occurs from MSB in the reg1 operation; otherwise, "0".

OV    "1" if an overflow occurs in the reg1 operation; otherwise, "0".

S    "1" if reg1 is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z    "1" if reg1 is 0; otherwise, "0".

SAT    —

[Description]    Updates the general-purpose register reg1 by adding -1 from its contents. If the contents after this

update are not 0, the following processing is performed. If the contents are 0, the system continues

to the next instruction.

• The result of logically shifting the 15-bit immediate data 1 bit to the left and zero-extending it to

word length is subtracted from the current PC value, and then the control is transferred.

• −1 (0xFFFFFFFF) is added to general-purpose register reg1. The carry flag is updated in the same

way as when the ADD instruction, not the SUB instruction, is executed.

[Supplement]    "0" is implicitly used for bit 0 of the 16-bit displacement. Note that, because the current PC value

used for calculation is the address of the first byte of this instruction, if the displacement value is 0,

the branch destination is this instruction.

**Caution**    Do not specify r0 for reg1.

<Multiply-accumulate instruction>

| | Multiply and add word |
|---|---|
| MAC | |
| | Multiply-accumulate for (signed) word data |

[Instruction format]     MAC  reg1, reg2, reg3, reg4

[Operation]     GR [reg4+1] || GR [reg4] ← GR [reg2] × GR [reg1] + GR [reg3+1] || GR [reg3]

[Format]     Format XI

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31              16
rrrrr111111RRRRR wwww0011110mmmm0
```

[Flags]     CY     —
            OV     —
            S      —
            Z      —
            SAT    —

[Description]     Multiplies the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by the word data in general-purpose
                  register reg1, then adds the result (64-bit data) to 64-bit data consisting of the lower 32 bits of
                  general-purpose register reg3 and the data in general-purpose register reg3+1 (for example, this
                  would be "r7" if the reg3 value is r6 and "1" is added) as the higher 32 bits. Of the result (64-bit data),
                  the higher 32 bits are stored in general-purpose register reg4+1 and the lower 32 bits are stored in
                  general-purpose register reg4.
                  The contents of general-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are handled as 32-bit signed integers.
                  This has no effect on general-purpose register reg1, reg2, reg3, or reg3+1.

Caution   General-purpose registers that can be specified as reg3 or reg4 must be an even-numbered register
          (r0, r2, r4, …, r30). The result is undefined if an odd-numbered register (r1, r3, …, r31) is specified.

<Multiply-accumulate instruction>

|  | Multiply and add word unsigned |
| --- | --- |
| MACU | |
| | Multiply-accumulate for (unsigned) word data |

[Instruction format]    MACU  reg1, reg2, reg3, reg4

[Operation]    GR [reg4+1] || GR [reg4] ← GR [reg2] × GR [reg1] + GR [reg3+1] || GR [reg3]

[Format]    Format XI

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 31 | 16 |
| --- | --- | --- |
| rrrrr111111RRRRR | wwww0011111mmmm0 | |

[Flags]    CY    —
           OV    —
           S     —
           Z     —
           SAT   —

[Description]    Multiplies the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by the word data in general-purpose
                register reg1, then adds the result (64-bit data) to 64-bit data consisting of the lower 32 bits of
                general-purpose register reg3 and the data in general-purpose register reg3+1 (for example, this
                would be "r7" if the reg3 value is r6 and "1" is added) as the higher 32 bits. Of the result (64-bit data),
                the higher 32 bits are stored in general-purpose register reg4+1 and the lower 32 bits are stored in
                general-purpose register reg4.
                The contents of general-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are handled as 32-bit signed integers.
                This has no effect on general-purpose register reg1, reg2, reg3, or reg3+1.

Caution    General-purpose registers that can be specified as reg3 or reg4 must be an even-numbered register
           (r0, r2, r4, …, r30). The result is undefined if an odd-numbered register (r1, r3, …, r31) is specified.

<Arithmetic instruction>

| | |
|---|---|
| **MOV** | Move register/immediate (5-bit) /immediate (32-bit) |
| | Data transfer |

[Instruction format]  (1)    MOV  reg1, reg2

(2)    MOV  imm5, reg2

(3)    MOV  imm32, reg1

[Operation]  (1)    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1]

(2)    GR [reg2] ← sign-extend (imm5)

(3)    GR [reg1] ← imm32

[Format]  (1)    Format I

(2)    Format II

(3)    Format VI

[Opcode]

15                              0

(1)  `rrrrr000000RRRRR`

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

15                              0

(2)  `rrrrr010000iiiii`

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

15                    0 31              16 47                    32

(3)  `00000110001RRRRR iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii IIIIIIIIIIIIIIII`

i (bits 31 to 16) refers to the lower 16 bits of 32-bit immediate data.

I (bits 47 to 32) refers to the higher 16 bits of 32-bit immediate data.

[Flags]    CY          —

OV          —

S            —

Z            —

SAT          —

[Description]  (1)    Copies and transfers the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to general-purpose

register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)    Copies and transfers the 5-bit immediate data, sign-extended to word length, to general-

purpose register reg2.

(3)    Copies and transfers the 32-bit immediate data to general-purpose register reg1.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Caution** | Do not specify r0 as reg2 in MOV reg1, reg2 for instruction format (1) or in MOV imm5, reg2 for instruction format (2). |

<Arithmetic instruction>

| | Move effective address |
|---|---|
| MOVEA | |
| | Effective address transfer |

[Instruction format]    MOVEA  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (imm16)

[Format]    Format VI

[Opcode]

```
15                    0 31                16
rrrrr110001RRRRR iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

[Flags]    CY    —
           OV    —
           S     —
           Z     —
           SAT   —

[Description]    Adds the 16-bit immediate data, sign-extended to word length, to the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. Neither general-purpose register reg1 nor the flags is affected.

[Supplement]    This instruction is to execute a 32-bit address calculation with the PSW flag value unchanged.

| |
|---|
| **Caution**   Do not specify r0 for reg2. |

<Arithmetic instruction>

| MOVHI | Move high halfword |
| --- | --- |
| | Higher halfword transfer |

[Instruction format]      MOVHI  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]      GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1] + (imm16 ‖ $0^{16}$)

[Format]      Format VI

[Opcode]

| 15                0 | 31              16 |
| --- | --- |
| rrrrr110010RRRRR | iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii |

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

[Flags]      CY       —
             OV       —
             S        —
             Z        —
             SAT      —

[Description]      Adds the word data with its higher 16 bits specified as the 16-bit immediate data and the lower 16 bits being "0" to the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. Neither general-purpose register reg1 nor the flags is affected.

[Supplement]      This instruction is to generate the higher 16 bits of a 32-bit address.

---

**Caution**   Do not specify r0 for reg2.

---

<Multiply instruction>

| MUL | Multiply word by register/immediate (9-bit) |
|---|---|
| | Multiplication of (signed) word data |

[Instruction format]     (1)     MUL  reg1, reg2, reg3

                         (2)     MUL  imm9, reg2, reg3

[Operation]              (1)     GR [reg3] ‖ GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] × GR [reg1]

                         (2)     GR [reg3] ‖ GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] × sign-extend (imm9)

[Format]                 (1)     Format XI

                         (2)     Format XII

[Opcode]

```
        15                0 31              16
(1)    rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww01000100000

        15                0 31              16
(2)    rrrrr111111iiiii wwwww01001IIII00
```

iiiii are the lower 5 bits of 9-bit immediate data.

IIII are the higher 4 bits of 9-bit immediate data.

[Flags]         CY          —

                OV          —

                S           —

                Z           —

                SAT         —

[Description]    (1)     Multiplies the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by the word data in general-purpose
                        register reg1, then stores the higher 32 bits of the result (64-bit data) in general-purpose register
                        reg3 and the lower 32 bits in general-purpose register reg2.
                        The contents of general-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are handled as 32-bit signed integers.
                        General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

                (2)     Multiplies the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by 9-bit immediate data, extended to
                        word length, then stores the higher 32 bits of the result (64-bit data) in general-purpose register reg3
                        and the lower 32 bits in general-purpose register reg2.

[Supplement]    When general-purpose register reg2 and general-purpose register reg3 are the same register, only the
                higher 32 bits of the multiplication result are stored in the register.

<Multiply instruction>

| MULH | Multiply halfword by register/immediate (5-bit) |
|------|------|
|      | Multiplication of (signed) halfword data |

[Instruction format]   (1)   MULH  reg1, reg2

(2)   MULH  imm5, reg2

[Operation]   (1)   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] (15:0) × GR [reg1] (15:0)

(2)   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] × sign-extend (imm5)

[Format]   (1)   Format I

(2)   Format II

[Opcode]

```
15                 0
```
(1)
```
rrrrr000111RRRRR
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

```
15                 0
```
(2)
```
rrrrr010111iiiii
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

[Flags]   CY      —

OV      —

S       —

Z       —

SAT     —

[Description]   (1)   Multiplies the lower halfword data of general-purpose register reg2 by the halfword data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)   Multiplies the lower halfword data of general-purpose register reg2 by the 5-bit immediate data, sign-extended to halfword length, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2.

[Supplement]   In the case of a multiplier or a multiplicand, the higher 16 bits of general-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are ignored.

**Caution**   Do not specify r0 for reg2.

<Multiply instruction>

| MULHI | Multiply halfword by immediate (16-bit) |
|---|---|
| | Multiplication of (signed) halfword immediate data |

[Instruction format]     MULHI  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]              GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1](15:0) × imm16

[Format]                 Format VI

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31              16
rrrrr110111RRRRR iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

[Flags]         CY       —
                OV       —
                S        —
                Z        —
                SAT      —

[Description]   Multiplies the lower halfword data of general-purpose register reg1 by the 16-bit immediate data and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

[Supplement]    In the case of a multiplicand, the higher 16 bits of general-purpose register reg1 are ignored.

**Caution**  Do not specify r0 for reg2.

<Multiply instruction>

| MULU | Multiply word unsigned by register/immediate (9-bit) |
| --- | --- |
| | Multiplication of (unsigned) word data |

[Instruction format]    (1)    MULU  reg1, reg2, reg3

                        (2)    MULU  imm9, reg2, reg3

[Operation]             (1)    GR [reg3] ∥ GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] × GR [reg1]

                        (2)    GR [reg3] ∥ GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] × zero-extend (imm9)

[Format]                (1)    Format XI

                        (2)    Format XII

[Opcode]

```
         15                0 31                16
(1)      rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww01000100010

         15                0 31                16
(2)      rrrrr111111iiiii wwwww01001IIIII10
```

iiiii are the lower 5 bits of 9-bit immediate data.

IIII are the higher 4 bits of 9-bit immediate data.

[Flags]                 CY         —
                        OV         —
                        S          —
                        Z          —
                        SAT        —

[Description]           (1)    Multiplies the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by the word data in general-purpose
                        register reg1, then stores the higher 32 bits of the result (64-bit data) in general-purpose register
                        reg3 and the lower 32 bits in general-purpose register reg2.
                        General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

                        (2)    Multiplies the word data in general-purpose register reg2 by 9-bit immediate data, zero-
                        extended to word length, then stores the higher 32 bits of the result (64-bit data) in general-purpose
                        register reg3 and the lower 32 bits in general-purpose register reg2.

[Supplement]            When general-purpose register reg2 and general-purpose register reg3 are the same register, only the
                        higher 32 bits of the multiplication result are stored in the register.

RENESAS

<Special instruction>

| | No operation |
|---|---|
| NOP | |
| | No operation |

[Instruction format]    NOP

[Operation]    No operation is performed.

[Format]    Format I

[Opcode]

15                    0

| 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 |
|---|

[Flags]    CY    —
           OV    —
           S     —
           Z     —
           SAT   —

[Description]    Performs no processing and executes the next instruction.

[Supplement]    The opcode is the same as that of MOV r0, r0.

<Logical instruction>

NOT

NOT

Logical negation (1's complement)

[Instruction format]    NOT  reg1, reg2

[Operation]             GR [reg2] ← NOT (GR [reg1] )

[Format]                Format I

[Opcode]                15                    0

```
rrrrr000001RRRRR
```

[Flags]         CY          —
                OV          0
                S           "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
                Z           "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".
                SAT         —

[Description]   Logically negates the word data of general-purpose register reg1 using 1's complement and stores
                the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

<Bit manipulation instruction>

| | NOT bit |
|---|---|
| NOT1 | |
| | NOT bit |

[Instruction format]    (1)    NOT1  bit#3, disp16 [reg1]

(2)    NOT1  reg2, [reg1]

[Operation]    (1)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, bit#3) )

token ← not-bit (token, bit#3)

Store-memory (adr, token, Byte)

(2)    adr ← GR [reg1]**Note**

token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, reg2) )

token ← not-bit (token, reg2)

Store-memory (adr, token, Byte)

**Note**    An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    (1)    Format VIII

(2)    Format IX

[Opcode]

```
        15                0 31               16
(1)    01bbb111110RRRRR ddddddddddddddddd
        15                0 31               16
(2)    rrrrr111111RRRRR 0000000011100010
```

[Flags]    CY          —

OV          —

S           —

Z           "1" if bit specified by operand = "0", "0" if bit specified by operand = "1".

SAT         —

[Description]        (1)      Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-

extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address,

then the bits indicated by the 3-bit bit number are inverted (0 → 1, 1 → 0) and the data is written

back to the original address.

If the specified bit of the read byte data is "0", the Z flag is set to "1", and if the specified bit is "1", the

Z flag is cleared to "0".

(2)      Reads the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data

is read from the generated address, then the bits specified by lower 3 bits of general-purpose

register reg2 are inverted (0 → 1, 1 → 0) and the data is written back to the original address.

If the specified bit of the read byte data is "0", the Z flag is set to "1", and if the specified bit is "1", the

Z flag is cleared to "0".


[Supplement]        The Z flag of PSW indicates the status of the specified bit (0 or 1) before this instruction is executed

and does not indicate the content of the specified bit resulting from the instruction execution.


| |
|---|
| **Caution**   This instruction provides an atomic guarantee aimed at exclusive control, and during the period between read and write operations, the target address is not affected by access due to any other cause. |

<Logical instruction>

OR

OR

OR

[Instruction format]    OR   reg1, reg2

[Operation]             GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] OR GR [reg1]

[Format]                Format I

[Opcode]                15                    0

```
rrrrr001000RRRRR
```

[Flags]         CY          —
                OV          0
                S           "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
                Z           "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".
                SAT         —

[Description]           ORs the word data of general-purpose register reg2 with the word data of general-purpose register
                        reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not
                        affected.

<Logical instruction>

| ORI | OR immediate (16-bit) |
|---|---|
|  | OR immediate |

[Instruction format]    ORI  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1] OR zero-extend (imm16)

[Format]    Format VI

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31              16
rrrrr110100RRRRR iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii
```

[Flags]    CY    —

OV    0

S    "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".

Z    "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT    —

[Description]    ORs the word data of general-purpose register reg1 with the 16-bit immediate data, zero-extended to word length, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

<Special instruction>

| | Pop registers from Stack |
|---|---|
| POPSP | |
| | POP from the stack |

[Instruction format]    POPSP   rh-rt

[Operation]             if  rh ≤ rt

                        then  cur ← rt

                                end ← rh

                                tmp ← sp

                                while ( cur ≥ end ) {

                                adr ← tmp**Notes 1, 2**

                                    GR[cur] ← Load-memory ( adr, Word )

                                    cur ← cur − 1

                                    tmp ← tmp + 4

                                }

                                sp ← tmp

                    **Notes** 1.   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

                          2.   The lower 2 bits of adr are masked to 0.

[Format]                Format XI

[Opcode]                15                     0 31                     16

                        | 01100111111RRRRR | wwwww00101100000 |
                        |---|---|

                        RRRRR indicates rh.

                        wwwww indicates rt.

[Flags]                 CY          —

                        OV          —

                        S           —

                        Z           —

                        SAT         —

[Description]           Loads general-purpose register rt to rh from the stack in descending order (rt, rt −1, rt − 2, …, rh).

                        After all the registers down to the specified register have been loaded, sp is updated (incremented).

[Supplement]        The lower two bits of the address specified by sp are masked by 0.

If an exception is acknowledged before sp is updated, instruction execution is halted and exception

handling is executed with the start address of this instruction used as the return address. The

POPSP instruction is then executed again. (The sp value from before the exception handling is

saved.)

---

**Caution**   If a register that includes sp(r3) is specified as the restore register (rh = 3 to 31), the value read from

the memory is not stored in sp(r3). This allows the POPSP instruction to be correctly re-executed

after execution has been halted.

---

<Special instruction>

PREPARE

Function prepare

Create stack frame

[Instruction format]     (1)    PREPARE  list12, imm5

                         (2)    PREPARE  list12, imm5, sp/imm[Note]

                         **Note** The sp/imm values are specified by bits 19 and 20 of the sub-opcode.

[Operation]              (1)    tmp ← sp

                         foreach (all regs in list12) {

                          tmp ← tmp − 4

                          adr ← tmp[Notes 1, 2]

                          Store-memory (adr, GR[reg in list12], Word )

                         }

                         sp ← tmp − zero-extend (imm5 logically shift left by 2)

                         (2)    tmp ← sp

                         foreach (all regs in list12) {

                          tmp ← tmp − 4

                          adr ← tmp[Notes 1, 2]

                          Store-memory (adr, GR[reg in list12], Word)

                         }

                         sp ← tmp − zero-extend (imm5 logically shift left by 2)


                         case

                          ff = 00:  ep ← sp

                          ff = 01:  ep ← sign-extend (imm16)

                          ff = 10:  ep ← imm16 logically shift left by 16

                          ff = 11:  ep ← imm32


                         **Notes** 1.   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

                                   2.   The lower 2 bits of adr are masked to 0.


[Format]                 Format XIII


[Opcode]
```
        15                0 31               16
(1)    0000011110iiiiiiL LLLLLLLLLLL00001
```

```
        15                0 31               16  Option (47-32 or 63-32)
(2)    0000011110iiiiiiL LLLLLLLLLLLff011      imm16 / imm32
```

In the case of 32-bit immediate data (imm32), bits 47 to 32 are the lower 16 bits of imm32 and bits 63 to 48 are the higher 16 bits of imm32.

`ff` = 00: sp is loaded to ep

`ff` = 01: Sign-extended 16-bit immediate data (bits 47 to 32) is loaded to ep

`ff` = 10: 16-bit logical left-shifted 16-bit immediate data (bits 47 to 32) is loaded to ep

`ff` = 11: 32-bit immediate data (bits 63 to 32) is loaded to ep

The values of `LLLLLLLLLLLL` are the corresponding bit values shown in register list "list12" (for example, the "L" at bit 21 of the opcode corresponds to the value of bit 21 in list12).

list12 is a 32-bit register list, defined as follows.

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 ... 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| r24 | r25 | r26 | r27 | r20 | r21 | r22 | r23 | r28 | r29 | r31 | -- | r30 |

Bits 31 to 21 and bit 0 correspond to general-purpose registers (r20 to r31), so that when any of these bits is set (1), it specifies a corresponding register operation as a processing target. For example, when r20 and r30 are specified, the values in list12 appear as shown below (register bits that do not correspond, i.e., bits 20 to 1 are set as "Don't care").

• When all of the register's non-corresponding bits are "0": 08000001H

• When all of the register's non-corresponding bits are "1": 081FFFFFH

[Flags]      CY      —

             OV      —

             S       —

             Z       —

             SAT     —

[Description]   (1)   Saves general-purpose registers specified in list12 (4 is subtracted from the sp value and the data is stored in that address). Next, subtracts 5-bit immediate data, logically left-shifted by 2 bits and zero-extended to word length, from sp.

(2)   Saves general-purpose registers specified in list12 (4 is subtracted from the sp value and the data is stored in that address). Next, subtracts 5-bit immediate data, logically left-shifted by 2 bits and zero-extended to word length, from sp.

Then, loads the data specified by the third operand (sp/imm) to ep.

[Supplement]    list12 general-purpose registers are saved in ascending order (r20, r21, ..., r31).

imm5 is used to create a stack frame that is used for auto variables and temporary data.

The lower two bits of the address specified by sp are masked to 0 and aligned to the word boundary.

**Caution**   If an exception occurs while this instruction is being executed, execution of the instruction might be
stopped after the write cycle and the register value write operation are completed, but sp will retain
its original value from before the start of execution. The instruction will be executed again later, after
a return from the exception.

<Special instruction>

Push registers to Stack

### PUSHSP

[Instruction format]    PUSHSP   rh-rt

[Operation]             if  rh ≤ rt
                        then  cur ← rh
                                end ← rt
                                tmp ← sp
                                while ( cur ≤ end ) {
                                    tmp ← tmp − 4
                                    adr ← tmp[Notes 1, 2]
                                    Store-memory (adr, GR[cur], Word)
                                    cur ← cur + 1
                                }
                                sp ← tmp

           **Notes** 1.   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.
                 2.   The lower 2 bits of adr are masked to 0.

[Format]        Format XI

[Opcode]
```
15                    0 31                16
01000111111RRRRR wwwww00101100000
```

RRRRR indicates rh.

wwwww indicates rt.

[Flags]         CY          —
                OV          —
                S           —
                Z           —
                SAT         —

[Description]   Stores general-purpose register rh to rt in the stack in ascending order (rh, rh +1, rh + 2, …, rt). After
                all the specified registers have been stored, sp is updated (decremented).

[Supplement]    The lower two bits of the address specified by sp are masked by 0.
                If an exception is acknowledged before sp is updated, instruction execution is halted and exception
                handling is executed with the start address of this instruction used as the return address. The
                PUSHSP instruction is then executed again. (The sp value from before the exception handling is
                saved.)

<Special instruction>

| RIE | Reserved instruction exception |
|-----|-------------------------------|
|     | Reserved instruction exception |

[Instruction format]   (1)  RIE

                       (2)  RIE imm5, imm4

[Operation]   FEPC ← PC (return PC)

              FEPSW ← PSW

              FEIC ← exception cause code (00000060H)

              PSW.UM ← 0

              PSW.NP ← 1

              PSW.EP ← 1

              PSW.ID ← 1

              PC ← exception handler address (offset address 60H)

[Format]   (1)  Format I

           (2)  Format X

[Opcode]
```
      15                 0
(1)  0000000001000000
```

```
      15             0 31              16
(2)  iiiii1111111IIII 0000000000000000
```
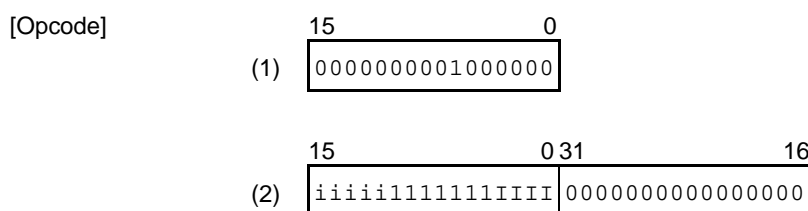
Where `iiiii` = imm5, `IIII` = imm4.

[Flags]   CY        —

          OV        —

          S         —

          Z         —

          SAT       —

[Description]   Saves the contents of the return PC (address of the RIE instruction) and the current contents of the PSW to FEPC and FEPSW, respectively, stores the exception cause code in the FEIC register, and updates the PSW according to the exception causes listed in **Table 4-1**. Execution then branches to the exception handler address and exception handling is started.

Exception handler addresses are calculated based on the offset address 60H. For details, see **4.5 Exception Handler Address**.

<Data manipulation instruction>

Rotate Left

## ROTL

Rotate

[Instruction format]   (1)    ROTL  imm5, reg2, reg3

(2)    ROTL  reg1,reg2,reg3

[Operation]   (1)    GR[reg3] ← GR[reg2] rotate left by zero-extend (imm5)

(2)    GR[reg3] ← GR[reg2] rotate left by GR[reg1]

[Format]        Format VII

[Opcode]

```
                 15              0 31              16
(1)  rrrrr111111iiiiii wwwww00011000100

                 15              0 31              16
(2)  rrrrr111111RRRRR  wwwww00011000110
```

[Flags]        CY           "1" if operation result bit 0 is "1"; otherwise "0", including if the rotate amount is "0".

OV           0

S            "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z            "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT          —

[Description]   (1)    Rotates the word data of general-purpose register reg2 to the left by the specified shift

amount, which is indicated by a 5-bit immediate value zero-extended to word length. The result is

written to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose register reg2 is not affected.

(2)    Rotates the word data of general-purpose register reg2 to the left by the specified shift

amount indicated by the lower 5 bits of general-purpose register reg1. The result is written to

general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not affected.

<Data manipulation instruction>

| | |
|---|---|
| **SAR** | Shift arithmetic right by register/immediate (5-bit) |
| | Arithmetic right shift |

[Instruction format]    (1)    SAR  reg1, reg2

(2)    SAR  imm5, reg2

(3)    SAR  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]    (1)    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] arithmetically shift right by GR [reg1]

(2)    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] arithmetically shift right by zero-extend (imm5)

(3)    GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] arithmetically shift right by GR [reg1]

[Format]    (1)    Format IX

(2)    Format II

(3)    Format XI

[Opcode]

```
       15              0 31              16
(1)    rrrrr111111RRRRR 0000000010100000
```

```
       15              0
(2)    rrrrr010101iiiii
```

```
       15              0 31              16
(3)    rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww00010100010
```

[Flags]    CY    "1" if the last bit shifted out is "1"; otherwise, "0" including non-shift.

OV    0

S    "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z    "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT    —

[Description]    (1)    Arithmetically right-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the position specified by the lower 5 bits of general-purpose register reg1, by copying the pre-shift MSB value to the post-shift MSB. The result is written to general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)    Arithmetically right-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the position specified by the 5-bit immediate data, zero-extended to word length, by copying the pre-shift MSB value to the post-shift MSB. The result is written to general-purpose register reg2.

(3)    Arithmetically right-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the position specified by the lower 5 bits of general-purpose register reg1, by copying the pre-shift MSB value to the post-shift MSB. The result is written to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not affected.

<Data manipulation instruction>

| | Shift and set flag condition |
|---|---|
| **SASF** | |
| | Shift and flag condition setting |

[Instruction format]    SASF  cccc, reg2

[Operation]    if conditions are satisfied

    then GR [reg2] ← (GR [reg2] Logically shift left by 1) OR 00000001H

    else GR [reg2] ← (GR [reg2] Logically shift left by 1) OR 00000000H

[Format]    Format IX

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31                16
rrrrr1111110cccc 0000001000000000
```

[Flags]    CY    —

    OV    —

    S    —

    Z    —

    SAT    —

[Description]    When the condition specified by condition code "cccc" is met, logically left-shifts data of general-purpose register reg2 by 1 bit, and sets (1) the least significant bit (LSB). If a condition is not met, logically left-shifts data of reg2 and clears the LSB.

Designate one of the condition codes shown in the following table as [cccc].

| Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula | Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 | V | OV = 1 | 0100 | S/N | S = 1 |
| 1000 | NV | OV = 0 | 1100 | NS/P | S = 0 |
| 0001 | C/L | CY = 1 | 0101 | T | Always (unconditional) |
| 1001 | NC/NL | CY = 0 | 1101 | SA | SAT = 1 |
| 0010 | Z | Z = 1 | 0110 | LT | (S xor OV) = 1 |
| 1010 | NZ | Z = 0 | 1110 | GE | (S xor OV) = 0 |
| 0011 | NH | (CY or Z) = 1 | 0111 | LE | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 1 |
| 1011 | H | (CY or Z) = 0 | 1111 | GT | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 0 |

[Supplement]    See the SETF instruction.

<Saturated operation instructions>

|  |  |
|---|---|
| | Saturated add register/immediate (5-bit) |
| **SATADD** | |
| | Saturated addition |

[Instruction format]   (1)   SATADD  reg1, reg2

(2)   SATADD  imm5, reg2

(3)   SATADD  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]   (1)   GR [reg2] ← saturated (GR [reg2] + GR [reg1] )

(2)   GR [reg2] ← saturated (GR [reg2] + sign-extend (imm5))

(3)   GR [reg3] ← saturated (GR [reg2] + GR [reg1] )

[Format]   (1)   Format I

(2)   Format II

(3)   Format XI

[Opcode]

```
        15                0
(1)  rrrrr000110RRRRR
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

```
        15                0
(2)  rrrrr010001iiiii
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

```
        15              0 31              16
(3)  rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww01110111010
```

[Flags]   CY        "1" if a carry occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

OV        "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S         "1" if saturated operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z         "1" if saturated operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT       "1" if OV = 1; otherwise, does not change.

[Description]   (1)   Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the word data of general-purpose register reg2, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. However, when the result exceeds the maximum positive value 7FFFFFFFH, 7FFFFFFFH is stored in reg2, and when it exceeds the maximum negative value 80000000H, 80000000H is stored in reg2; then the SAT flag is set (1). General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)   Adds the 5-bit immediate data, sign-extended to the word length, to the word data of general-purpose register reg2, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. However, when the result exceeds the maximum positive value 7FFFFFFFH, 7FFFFFFFH is stored in reg2, and when it exceeds the maximum negative value 80000000H, 80000000H is stored in reg2; then the SAT flag is set (1).

(3)     Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the word data of general-purpose

register reg2, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg3. However, when the result

exceeds the maximum positive value 7FFFFFFFH, 7FFFFFFFH is stored in reg3, and when it

exceeds the maximum negative value 80000000H, 80000000H is stored in reg3; then the SAT flag

is set (1). General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not affected.

[Supplement]          The SAT flag is a cumulative flag. The saturate result sets the flag to "1" and will not be cleared to

"0" even if the result of the subsequent operation is not saturated. The saturated operation

instruction is executed normally, even with the SAT flag set to "1".

---

**Cautions** 1.   Use LDSR instruction and load data to the PSW to clear the SAT flag to "0".

2.   Do not specify r0 as reg2 in instruction format (1) SATADD reg1, reg2 and in instruction format

(2) SATADD imm5, reg2.

---

<Saturated operation instruction>

| SATSUB | Saturated subtract |
|--------|--------------------|
|        | Saturated subtraction |

[Instruction format]    (1)    SATSUB  reg1, reg2

(2)    SATSUB  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]    (1)    GR [reg2] ← saturated (GR [reg2] − GR [reg1] )

(2)    GR [reg3] ← saturated (GR [reg2] − GR [reg1] )

[Format]    (1)    Format I

(2)    Format XI

[Opcode]

```
          15                 0
(1)   rrrrr000101RRRRR
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

```
          15              0 31              16
(2)   rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww01110011010
```

[Flags]    CY    "1" if a borrow occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

OV    "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S    "1" if saturated operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z    "1" if saturated operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT    "1" if OV = 1; otherwise, does not change.

[Description]    (1)    Subtracts the word data of general-purpose register reg1 from the word data of general-purpose register reg2 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. If the result exceeds the maximum positive value 7FFFFFFFH, 7FFFFFFFH is stored in reg2; if the result exceeds the maximum negative value 80000000H, 80000000H is stored in reg2. The SAT flag is set to "1". General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)    Subtracts the word data of general-purpose register reg1 from the word data of general-purpose register reg2, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg3. However, when the result exceeds the maximum positive value 7FFFFFFFH, 7FFFFFFFH is stored in reg3, and when it exceeds the maximum negative value 80000000H, 80000000H is stored in reg3; then the SAT flag is set (1). General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not affected.

[Supplement]    The SAT flag is a cumulative flag. The saturate result sets the flag to "1" and will not be cleared to "0" even if the result of the subsequent operation is not saturated. The saturated operation instruction is executed normally, even with the SAT flag set to "1".

Cautions  1.   Use LDSR instruction and load data to the PSW to clear the SAT flag to "0".
          2.   Do not specify r0 as reg2 in instruction format (1) SATSUB reg1, reg2.

<Saturated operation instruction>

| | Saturated subtract immediate |
|---|---|
| **SATSUBI** | |
| | Saturated subtraction |

[Instruction format]     SATSUBI  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]     GR [reg2] ← saturated (GR [reg1] − sign-extend (imm16) )

[Format]     Format VI

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31               16
rrrrr110011RRRRR iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

[Flags]     CY          "1" if a borrow occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

            OV          "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

            S           "1" if saturated operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

            Z           "1" if saturated operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

            SAT         "1" if OV = 1; otherwise, does not change.

[Description]     Subtracts the 16-bit immediate data, sign-extended to word length, from the word data of general-
                  purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. If the result exceeds
                  the maximum positive value 7FFFFFFFH, 7FFFFFFFH is stored in reg2; if the result exceeds the
                  maximum negative value 80000000H, 80000000H is stored in reg2. The SAT flag is set to "1".
                  General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

[Supplement]     The SAT flag is a cumulative flag. The saturation result sets the flag to "1" and will not be cleared to
                 "0" even if the result of the subsequent operation is not saturated. The saturated operation
                 instruction is executed normally, even with the SAT flag set to "1".

| **Cautions**  1.   Use LDSR instruction and load data to the PSW to clear the SAT flag to "0". |
|---|
| 2.   Do not specify r0 for reg2. |

<Saturated operation instruction>

| SATSUBR | Saturated subtract reverse |
| | Saturated reverse subtraction |

[Instruction format]    SATSUBR  reg1, reg2

[Operation]    GR [reg2] ← saturated (GR [reg1] − GR [reg2] )

[Format]    Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
rrrrr000100RRRRR
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

[Flags]    CY    "1" if a borrow occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

OV    "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S    "1" if saturated operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z    "1" if saturated operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT    "1" if OV = 1; otherwise, does not change.

[Description]    Subtracts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 from the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. If the result exceeds the maximum positive value 7FFFFFFFH, 7FFFFFFFH is stored in reg2; if the result exceeds the maximum negative value 80000000H, 80000000H is stored in reg2. The SAT flag is set to "1". General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

[Supplement]    The SAT flag is a cumulative flag. The saturation result sets the flag to "1" and will not be cleared to "0" even if the result of the subsequent operation is not saturated. The saturated operation instruction is executed normally, even with the SAT flag set to "1".

---

**Cautions**  1.  Use LDSR instruction and load data to the PSW to clear the SAT flag to "0".
2.  Do not specify r0 for reg2.

---

<Conditional operation instructions>

```
                                                                    Subtract on condition flag
  SBF

                                                                    Conditional subtraction
```

[Instruction format]    SBF  cccc, reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]             if conditions are satisfied

                        then GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] − GR [reg1] −1

                        else GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] − GR [reg1] −0

[Format]                Format XI

[Opcode]                15              0 31              16

                        | rrrrr111111RRRRR | wwwww011100cccc0 |

[Flags]        CY            "1" if a borrow occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

               OV            "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

               S             "1" if operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

               Z             "1" if operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

               SAT           —

[Description]           Subtracts 1 from the result of subtracting the word data of general-purpose register reg1 from the

                        word data of general-purpose register reg2, and stores the result of subtraction in general-purpose

                        register reg3, if the condition specified by condition code "cccc" is satisfied.

                        If the condition specified by condition code "cccc" is not satisfied, subtracts the word data of general-

                        purpose register reg1 from the word data of general-purpose register reg2, and stores the result in

                        general-purpose register reg3.

                        General-purpose registers reg1 and register 2 are not affected.

                        Designate one of the condition codes shown in the following table as [cccc]. (However, cccc cannot

                        equal 1101.)

| Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula | Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 | V | OV = 1 | 0100 | S/N | S = 1 |
| 1000 | NV | OV = 0 | 1100 | NS/P | S = 0 |
| 0001 | C/L | CY = 1 | 0101 | T | Always (Unconditional) |
| 1001 | NC/NL | CY = 0 | 0110 | LT | (S xor OV) = 1 |
| 0010 | Z | Z = 1 | 1110 | GE | (S xor OV) = 0 |
| 1010 | NZ | Z = 0 | 0111 | LE | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 1 |
| 0011 | NH | (CY or Z) = 1 | 1111 | GT | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 0 |
| 1011 | H | (CY or Z) = 0 | (1101) | 1011 | Setting prohibited |

<Bit search instructions>

## SCH0L

Search zero from left

Bit (0) search from MSB side

[Instruction format]   SCH0L   reg2, reg3

[Operation]   GR [reg3] ← search zero from left of GR [reg2]

[Format]   Format IX

[Opcode]

| 15                    0 | 31                  16 |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| rrrrr11111100000        | wwwww01101100100       |

[Flags]   CY   "1" if bit (0) is found eventually; otherwise, "0".

OV   0

S   0

Z   "1" if bit (0) is not found; otherwise, "0".

SAT   —

[Description]   Searches word data of general-purpose register reg2 from the left side (MSB side), and writes the number of 1s before the bit position (0 to 31) at which 0 is first found plus 1 to general-purpose register reg3 (e.g., when bit 31 of reg2 is 0, 01H is written to reg3).

When bit (0) is not found, 0 is written to reg3, and the Z flag is simultaneously set (1). If the bit (0) found is the LSB, the CY flag is set (1).

<Bit search instructions>

SCH0R

Search zero from right

Bit (0) search from LSB side

[Instruction format]   SCH0R  reg2, reg3

[Operation]   GR [reg3] ← search zero from right of GR [reg2]

[Format]   Format IX

[Opcode]

| 15                0 | 31                16 |
|---|---|
| rrrrr11111100000 | wwwww01101100000 |

[Flags]   CY   "1" if bit (0) is found eventually; otherwise, "0".

OV   0

S   0

Z   "1" if bit (0) is not found; otherwise, "0".

SAT   —

[Description]   Searches word data of general-purpose register reg2 from the right side (LSB side), and writes the number of 1s before the bit position (0 to 31) at which 0 is first found plus 1 to general-purpose register reg3 (e.g., when bit 0 of reg2 is 0, 01H is written to reg3).

When bit (0) is not found, 0 is written to reg3, and the Z flag is simultaneously set (1). If the bit (0) found is the MSB, the CY flag is set (1).

<Bit search instructions>

---

## SCH1L

Search one from left

Bit (1) search from MSB side

---

[Instruction format]     SCH1L  reg2, reg3

[Operation]              GR [reg3] ← search one from left of GR [reg2]

[Format]                 Format IX

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31              16
rrrrr11111100000 wwwww01101100110
```

[Flags]         CY          "1" if bit (0) is found eventually; otherwise, "0".

                OV          0

                S           0

                Z           "1" if bit (0) is not found; otherwise, "0".

                SAT         —

[Description]   Searches word data of general-purpose register reg2 from the left side (MSB side), and writes the
                number of 0s before the bit position (0 to 31) at which 1 is first found plus 1 to general-purpose
                register reg3 (e.g., when bit 31 of reg2 is 1, 01H is written to reg3).
                When bit (1) is not found, 0 is written to reg3, and the Z flag is simultaneously set (1). If the bit (1)
                found is the LSB, the CY flag is set (1).

---

<Bit search instructions>

---

## SCH1R

Search one from right

Bit (1) search from LSB side

---

[Instruction format]    SCH1R  reg2, reg3

[Operation]    GR [reg3] ← search one from right of GR [reg2]

[Format]    Format IX

[Opcode]

| 15                        0 | 31                       16 |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| rrrrr11111100000 | wwwww01101100010 |

[Flags]    CY    "1" if bit (0) is found eventually; otherwise, "0".

OV    0

S    0

Z    "1" if bit (0) is not found; otherwise, "0".

SAT    —

[Description]    Searches word data of general-purpose register reg2 from the right side (LSB side), and writes the
number of 0s before the bit position (0 to 31) at which 1 is first found plus 1 to general-purpose
register reg3 (e.g., when bit 0 of reg2 is 1, 01H is written to reg3).
When bit (1) is not found, 0 is written to reg3, and the Z flag is simultaneously set (1). If the bit (1)
found is the MSB, the CY flag is set (1).

<Bit manipulation instruction>

---

SET1

Set bit

Bit setting

---

[Instruction format]      (1)      SET1  bit#3, disp16 [reg1]

                          (2)      SET1  reg2, [reg1]


[Operation]               (1)      adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

                          token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

                          Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, bit#3) )

                          token ← set-bit (token, bit#3)

                          Store-memory (adr, token, Byte)

                          (2)      adr ← GR [reg1]**Note**

                          token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

                          Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, reg2) )

                          token ← set-bit (token, reg2)

                          Store-memory (adr, token, Byte)


                          **Note**   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.


[Format]                  (1)      Format VIII

                          (2)      Format IX


[Opcode]                           15                  0 31                16

                          (1)      `00bbb111110RRRRR dddddddddddddddd`

                                   15                  0 31                16

                          (2)      `rrrrr111111RRRRR 0000000011100000`


[Flags]          CY          —

                 OV          —

                 S           —

                 Z           "1" if bit specified by operand = "0", "0" if bit specified by operand = "1".

                 SAT         —

[Description]        (1)        Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the16-bit displacement data, sign-

extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address,

the bits indicated by the 3-bit bit number are set (1) and the data is written back to the original

address.

If the specified bit of the read byte data is "0", the Z flag is set to "1", and if the specified bit is "1", the

Z flag is cleared to "0".

(2)        Reads the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data

is read from the generated address, the lower 3 bits indicated of general-purpose register reg2 are set

(1) and the data is written back to the original address.

If the specified bit of the read byte data is "0", the Z flag is set to "1", and if the specified bit is "1", the

Z flag is cleared to "0".


[Supplement]        The Z flag of PSW indicates the initial status of the specified bit (0 or 1) and does not indicate the

content of the specified bit resulting from the instruction execution.

---

**Caution**   This instruction provides an atomic guarantee aimed at exclusive control, and during the period

between read and write operations, the target address is not affected by access due to any other

cause.

---

<Data manipulation instruction>

|  | Set flag condition |
|---|---|
| SETF | |
|  | Flag condition setting |

[Instruction format]    SETF  cccc, reg2

[Operation]             if conditions are satisfied

    then GR [reg2] ← 00000001H

    else GR [reg2] ← 00000000H

[Format]                Format IX

[Opcode]

| 15                    0 | 31                   16 |
|---|---|
| rrrrr1111110cccc | 0000000000000000 |

[Flags]         CY          —

        OV          —

        S           —

        Z           —

        SAT         —

[Description]    When the condition specified by condition code "cccc" is met, stores "1" to general-purpose register reg2 if a condition is met and stores "0" if a condition is not met.

Designate one of the condition codes shown in the following table as [cccc].

| Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula | Condition Code | Name | Condition Formula |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 | V | OV = 1 | 0100 | S/N | S = 1 |
| 1000 | NV | OV = 0 | 1100 | NS/P | S = 0 |
| 0001 | C/L | CY = 1 | 0101 | T | Always (Unconditional) |
| 1001 | NC/NL | CY = 0 | 1101 | SA | SAT = 1 |
| 0010 | Z | Z = 1 | 0110 | LT | (S xor OV) = 1 |
| 1010 | NZ | Z = 0 | 1110 | GE | (S xor OV) = 0 |
| 0011 | NH | (CY or Z) = 1 | 0111 | LE | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 1 |
| 1011 | H | (CY or Z) = 0 | 1111 | GT | ( (S xor OV) or Z) = 0 |

[Supplement]         Examples of SETF instruction:

(1)   Translation of multiple condition clauses

 If A of statement *if (A)* in C language consists of two or greater condition clauses ($a_1$, $a_2$,

$a_3$, and so on), it is usually translated to a sequence of *if ($a_1$) then, if ($a_2$) then*. The object code

executes "conditional branch" by checking the result of evaluation equivalent to $a_n$. Because a

pipeline operation requires more time to execute "condition judgment" + "branch" than to execute an

ordinary operation, the result of evaluating each condition clause *if ($a_n$)* is stored in register Ra. By

performing a logical operation to $Ra_n$ after all the condition clauses have been evaluated, the

pipeline delay can be prevented.

(2)   Double-length operation

 To execute a double-length operation, such as "Add with Carry", the result of the CY flag can be

stored in general-purpose register reg2. Therefore, a carry from the lower bits can be represented as

a numeric value.

<Data manipulation instruction>

---

Shift logical left by register/immediate (5-bit)

# SHL

Logical left shift

---

[Instruction format]    (1)    SHL  reg1, reg2

(2)    SHL  imm5, reg2

(3)    SHL  reg1, reg2, reg3


[Operation]    (1)    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] logically shift left by GR [reg1]

(2)    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] logically shift left by zero-extend (imm5)

(3)    GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] logically shift left by GR [reg1]


[Format]    (1)    Format IX

(2)    Format II

(3)    Format XI


[Opcode]

```
     15                0 31                16
(1)  rrrrr111111RRRRR 000000011000000
```

```
     15                0
(2)  rrrrr010110iiiii
```

```
     15                0 31                16
(3)  rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww00011000010
```


[Flags]    CY          "1" if the last bit shifted out is "1"; otherwise, "0" including non-shift.

OV          0

S           "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z           "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT         —


[Description]    (1)    Logically left-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the

position specified by the lower 5 bits of general-purpose register reg1, by shifting "0" to LSB. The

result is written to general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)    Logically left-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the

position specified by the 5-bit immediate data, zero-extended to word length, by shifting "0" to LSB.

The result is written to general-purpose register reg2.

(3)    Logically left-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the

position specified by the lower 5 bits of general-purpose register reg1, by shifting "0" to LSB. The

result is written to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not

affected.

---

<Data manipulation instruction>

| SHR | Shift logical right by register/immediate (5-bit) |
|---|---|
| | Logical right shift |

[Instruction format]    (1)    SHR  reg1, reg2

(2)    SHR  imm5, reg2

(3)    SHR  reg1, reg2, reg3

[Operation]    (1)    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] logically shift right by GR [reg1]

(2)    GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] logically shift right by zero-extend (imm5)

(3)    GR [reg3] ← GR [reg2] logically shift right by GR [reg1]

[Format]    (1)    Format IX

(2)    Format II

(3)    Format XI

[Opcode]

```
       15                 0 31                16
(1)    rrrrr111111RRRRR 000000010000000

       15                 0
(2)    rrrrr010100iiiii

       15                 0 31                16
(3)    rrrrr111111RRRRR wwwww00010000010
```

[Flags]    CY        "1" if the last bit shifted out is "1"; otherwise, "0" including non-shift.

OV        0

S        "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z        "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT        —

[Description]    (1)    Logically right-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the
position specified by the lower 5 bits of general-purpose register reg1, by shifting "0" to MSB. The
result is written to general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

(2)    Logically right-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the
position specified by the 5-bit immediate data, zero-extended to word length, by shifting "0" to MSB.
The result is written to general-purpose register reg2.

(3)    Logically right-shifts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 by 'n' (0 to +31), the
position specified by the lower 5 bits of general-purpose register reg1, by shifting "0" to MSB. The
result is written to general-purpose register reg3. General-purpose registers reg1 and reg2 are not
affected.

<Load instruction>

SLD.B

Short format load byte

Load of (signed) byte data

[Instruction format]    SLD.B  disp7 [ep] , reg2

[Operation]    adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp7)**Note**

GR [reg2] ← sign-extend (Load-memory (adr, Byte) )

**Note**   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    Format IV

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 |
|----|----|

```
rrrrr0110ddddddd
```

[Flags]    CY    —

OV    —

S    —

Z    —

SAT    —

[Description]    Adds the 7-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to the element pointer to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address, sign-extended to word length, and stored in reg2.

RENESAS

<Load instruction>

| | Short format load byte unsigned |
| --- | --- |
| **SLD.BU** | |
| | Load of (unsigned) byte data |

[Instruction format]   SLD.BU  disp4 [ep] , reg2

[Operation]   adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp4)**Note**

GR [reg2] ← zero-extend (Load-memory (adr, Byte) )

**Note**   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]   Format IV

[Opcode]

```
15                0
rrrrr0000110dddd
```

rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

[Flags]   CY   —
OV   —
S    —
Z    —
SAT  —

[Description]   Adds the 4-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to the element pointer to generate a 32-bit address. Byte data is read from the generated address, zero-extended to word length, and stored in reg2.

**Caution**   Do not specify r0 for reg2.

<Load instruction>

SLD.H

Short format load halfword

Load of (signed) halfword data

[Instruction format]     SLD.H  disp8 [ep] , reg2

[Operation]     adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp8)**Note**

GR [reg2] ← sign-extend (Load-memory (adr, Halfword) )

**Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]     Format IV

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 |
|---|---|

```
rrrrr1000ddddddd
```

ddddddd is the higher 7 bits of disp8.

[Flags]     CY          —

OV          —

S           —

Z           —

SAT          —

[Description]     Adds the element pointer to the 8-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address. Halfword data is read from this 32-bit address, sign-extended to word length, and stored in general-purpose register reg2.

Caution   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might occur as a result of address calculation.
For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

|  | Short format load halfword unsigned |
| --- | --- |
| SLD.HU | |
|  | Load of (unsigned) halfword data |

---

[Instruction format]        SLD.HU  disp5 [ep] , reg2


[Operation]                 adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp5)**Note**

                            GR [reg2] ← zero-extend (Load-memory (adr, Halfword) )


                            **Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.


[Format]                    Format IV


[Opcode]                    15                  0

                            | rrrrr0000111dddd |
                            | --- |

                            rrrrr ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg2.)

                            dddd  is the higher 4 bits of disp5.


[Flags]          CY          —
                 OV          —
                 S           —
                 Z           —
                 SAT         —


[Description]               Adds the element pointer to the 5-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to generate a

                            32-bit address. Halfword data is read from this 32-bit address, zero-extended to word length, and

                            stored in general-purpose register reg2.


---

**Cautions** 1.   Do not specify r0 for reg2.

2.   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might

     occur as a result of address calculation.

     For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

---

RENESAS

<Load instruction>

| | Short format load word |
|---|---|
| **SLD.W** | |
| | Load of word data |

[Instruction format]    SLD.W  disp8 [ep] , reg2

[Operation]    adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp8)**Note**

GR [reg2] ← Load-memory (adr, Word)

**Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    Format IV

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
rrrrr1010dddddd0
```

dddddd is the higher 6 bits of disp8.

[Flags]    CY        —
OV        —
S         —
Z         —
SAT       —

[Description]    Adds the element pointer to the 8-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to generate a
32-bit address. Word data is read from this 32-bit address, and stored in general-purpose register
reg2.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might
occur as a result of address calculation.
For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

RENESAS

<Special instruction>

| | Snooze |
|---|---|
| SNOOZE | |
| | Snooze |

[Instruction format]     Snooze

 [Operation]              Snooze while hardware-defined period

[Format]         Format X

[Opcode]         

| 15             0 | 31            16 |
|---|---|
| 0000111111100000 | 0000000100100000 |

[Flags]          CY      —

                 OV      —

                 S       —

                 Z       —

                 SAT     —

 [Description]    Temporarily halts operation of the CPU core for the period defined by the hardware specifications or
                 when the CPU enters a specific state.
                 When the specified period has elapsed or the CPU exits the specified state, CPU operation
                 automatically resumes and instruction execution begins from the next instruction.
                 The SNOOZE state is released under the following conditions.

                 • The predefined period of time passes
                 • A terminating exception occurs

                 Even if the conditions for acknowledging the above exceptions are not satisfied (due to the ID or NP
                 value), as long as a SNOOZE mode release request exists, the SNOOZE state is released (for
                 example, even if PSW.ID = 1, the SNOOZE state is released when INT0 occurs).
                 Note, however, that the SNOOZE mode will not be released if terminating exceptions are masked
                 by the following mask settings, which are defined individually for each function.
                 • Terminating exceptions are masked by an interrupt channel mask setting specified by the interrupt
                 controller[Note].
                 • Terminating exceptions are masked by a mask setting specified by using the floating-point
                 operation exception enable bit.
                 • Terminating exceptions are masked by a mask setting defined by a hardware function other than
                 the above.

                 **Note**    This does not include masking specified by the ISPR and PMR registers.

[Supplement]     This instruction is used to prevent the CPU performance from dropping in a multi-core system due to
                 bus band occupancy during a spinlock.

**Caution**   1. The period of the pause triggered by the SNOOZE instruction is defined according to the hardware
             specifications of the CPU core. For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Store instruction>

| | |
|---|---|
| **SST.B** | Short format store byte |
| | Storage of byte data |

[Instruction format]      SST.B  reg2, disp7 [ep]


[Operation]      adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp7)**Note**

Store-memory (adr, GR [reg2] , Byte)


**Note**   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.


[Format]      Format IV


[Opcode]

```
15                    0
rrrrr0111ddddddd
```


[Flags]      CY      —

OV      —

S       —

Z       —

SAT     —


[Description]      Adds the element pointer to the 7-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the data of the lowest byte of reg2 to the generated address.

<Store instruction>

| | Short format store halfword |
|---|---|
| **SST.H** | |
| | Storage of halfword data |

[Instruction format]    SST.H  reg2, disp8 [ep]

[Operation]    adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp8)**Note**

Store-memory (adr, GR [reg2] , Halfword)

**Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    Format IV

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
rrrrr1001ddddddd
```

ddddddd is the higher 7 bits of disp8.

[Flags]    CY        —

OV        —

S         —

Z         —

SAT       —

[Description]    Adds the element pointer to the 8-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address, and stores the lower halfword data of reg2 to the generated 32-bit address.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might occur as a result of address calculation.
For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Store instruction>

| SST.W | Short format store word |
| --- | --- |
| | Storage of word data |

[Instruction format]   SST.W  reg2, disp8 [ep]

[Operation]   adr ← ep + zero-extend (disp8)**Note**

Store-memory (adr, GR [reg2] , Word)

**Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]   Format IV

[Opcode]

```
15                 0
rrrrr1010dddddd1
```

dddddd is the higher 6 bits of disp8.

[Flags]   CY        —
OV        —
S         —
Z         —
SAT       —

[Description]   Adds the element pointer to the 8-bit displacement data, zero-extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the word data of reg2 to the generated 32-bit address.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might occur as a result of address calculation.
For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Store instruction>

Store byte

# ST.B

Storage of byte data

[Instruction format]    (1)    ST.B  reg2, disp16 [reg1]

                        (2)    ST.B  reg3, disp23 [reg1]

[Operation]    (1)    adr ←  GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)**Note**

                      Store-memory (adr, GR [reg2], Byte)

               (2)    adr ←  GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)**Note**

                      Store-memory (adr, GR [reg3], Byte)

               **Note** An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    (1)    Format VII

            (2)    Format XIV

[Opcode]

```
        15                 0 31              16
(1)   | rrrrr111010RRRRR | dddddddddddddddd |
```

```
        15                 0 31          16 47              32
(2)   | 000000111100RRRRR | wwwwwddddddd1101 | DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD |
```

Where RRRRR = reg1, wwwww = reg3.

ddddddd is the lower 7 bits of disp23.

DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]    CY       —

           OV       —

           S        —

           Z        —

           SAT      —

[Description]    (1)    Adds the data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-extended
                       to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the lowest byte data of general-purpose
                       register reg2 to the generated address.

                (2)    Adds the data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-extended
                       to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the lowest byte data of general-purpose
                       register reg3 to the generated address.

RENESAS

<Store instruction>

| | Store Double Word |
|---|---|
| ST.DW | |
| | Storage of doubleword data |

[Instruction format]    ST.DW  reg3, disp23[reg1]

[Operation]    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)**Note**

data ← GR[reg3+1] || GR[reg3]

Store-memory (adr, data, Double-word)

**Note**    An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]    Format XIV

[Opcode]

| 15            0 | 31              16 | 47              32 |
|---|---|---|
| 00000111101RRRRR | wwwwwddddddd01111 | DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD |

Where RRRRRR = reg1, wwwww = reg3.

dddddd is the lower side bits 6 to 1 of disp23.

DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]    CY         —

OV         —

S          —

Z          —

SAT        —

[Description]    Adds the data of general-purpose register reg1 to a 23-bit displacement value sign-extended to word

length to generate a 32-bit address. Doubleword data consisting of the lower 32 bits of the word data

of general-purpose register reg3 and the higher 32 bits of the word data of reg3 + 1 is then stored at

this address.

[Supplement]    reg3 must be an even-numbered register.

---

**Cautions** 1.   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might

occur as a result of address calculation.

For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

2.   However, a misaligned access exception will not occur if the result of address calculation has a

word boundary.

---

<Store instruction>

---

ST.H

Store halfword

Storage of halfword data

---

[Instruction format]    (1)    ST.H  reg2, disp16 [reg1]

(2)    ST.H  reg3, disp23 [reg1]


[Operation]    (1)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)[Note]

Store-memory (adr, GR [reg2], Halfword)

(2)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)[Note]

Store-memory (adr, GR [reg3], Halfword)


   **Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.


[Format]    (1)    Format VII

(2)    Format XIV


[Opcode]

```
        15              031              16
(1)  [rrrrr111011RRRRR ddddddddddddddd0]
```

Where ddddddddddddddd is the higher 15 bits of disp16.

```
        15              031          1647              32
(2)  [00000111101RRRRR wwwwwddddded01101 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD]
```

Where RRRRR = reg1, wwwww = reg3.

dddddd is the lower side bits 6 to 1 of disp23.

DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD is the higher 16 bits of disp23.


[Flags]    CY        —

OV        —

S         —

Z         —

SAT       —


[Description]    (1)    Adds the data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-extended
to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the lower halfword data of general-purpose
register reg2 to the generated address.

(2)    Adds the data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-extended
to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the lower halfword data of general-purpose
register reg3 to the generated address.

---

RENESAS

**Caution**  According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might
occur as a result of address calculation.
For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Store instruction>

| ST.W | Store word |
|------|-----------|
|      | Storage of word data |

[Instruction format]    (1)    ST.W  reg2, disp16 [reg1]

                        (2)    ST.W  reg3, disp23 [reg1]

[Operation]             (1)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)[Note]

                               Store-memory (adr, GR [reg2], Word)

                        (2)    adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp23)[Note]

                               Store-memory (adr, GR [reg3], Word)

                        **Note**   An MAE or MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]                (1)    Format VII

                        (2)    Format XIV

[Opcode]

```
      15                 031             16
 (1) rrrrr111011RRRRR dddddddddddddddd1
```

Where `dddddddddddddddd` is the higher 15 bits of disp16.

```
      15                 031             1647                 32
 (2) 00000111100RRRRR wwwwwdddddd01111 DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
```

Where `RRRRR` = reg1, `wwwww` = reg3.

`dddddd` is the lower side bits 6 to 1 of disp23.

`DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD` is the higher 16 bits of disp23.

[Flags]                 CY          —

                        OV          —

                        S           —

                        Z           —

                        SAT         —

[Description]           (1)    Adds the data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 16-bit displacement data, sign-extended
                               to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the word data of general-purpose register
                               reg2 to the generated 32-bit address.

                        (2)    Adds the data of general-purpose register reg1 to the 23-bit displacement data, sign-extended
                               to word length, to generate a 32-bit address and stores the word data of general-purpose register
                               reg3 to the generated 32-bit address.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might
occur as a result of address calculation.
For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Special instruction>

STC.W

Store Conditional

Conditional storage when atomic word data manipulation is complete

[Instruction format]     STC.W  reg3, [reg1]

[Operation]              adr ← GR[reg1]**Note 1**

                         data ← GR[reg3]

                         Store-memory (adr, data, Word)

                         **Note**   1.  An MAE, MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]                 Format VII

[Opcode]

| 15                0 | 31               16 |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 00000111111RRRRR    | wwwww01101111010    |

[Flags]           CY        —

                  OV        —

                  S         —

                  Z         —

                  SAT       —

[Description]            If issued, the CPU handles this instruction as the ST.W instruction.

**Caution**   According to the CPU core hardware specifications, a misaligned access exception (MAE) might
              occur as a result of address calculation.
              For details, see the hardware manual of the product used.

<Special instruction>

| STSR | Store contents of system register |
| --- | --- |
| | Storage of contents of system register |

[Instruction format]    STSR  regID, reg2, selID

STSR  regID, reg2

[Operation]    GR [reg2] ← SR [regID, selID]**Note**

> **Note**   An exception might occur depending on the access permission. For details, see **2.5.3 Register Updating**.

[Format]    Format IX

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31                16
rrrrr111111RRRRR sssss00001000000
```

`rrrrr`: reg2, `sssss`: selID, `RRRRR`: regID

[Flags]    CY    —
OV    —
S    —
Z    —
SAT    —

[Description]    Stores the system register contents specified by the system register number and group number (regID, selID) in general-purpose register reg2. The system register is not affected. If selID is omitted, it is assumed that selID is 0.

[Supplement]    A PIE or UCPOP exception might occur as a result of executing this instruction, depending on the combination of CPU operating mode and system register to be accessed. For details, see **2.5.3 Register Updating**.

> **Caution**   The system register number or group number is a unique number used to identify each system register. How to access undefined registers is described in **2.5.4 Accessing Undefined Registers**, but accessing undefined registers is not recommended**.**

<Arithmetic instruction>

| SUB | Subtract |
| --- | --- |
| | Subtraction |

[Instruction format]     SUB  reg1, reg2

[Operation]     GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] − GR [reg1]

[Format]     Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
rrrrr001101RRRRR
```

[Flags]     CY          "1" if a borrow occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

OV          "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

S           "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

Z           "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT         —

[Description]     Subtracts the word data of general-purpose register reg1 from the word data of general-purpose
register reg2 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is
not affected.

<Arithmetic instruction>

| SUBR | Subtract reverse |
|------|------------------|
|      | Reverse subtraction |

[Instruction format]   SUBR  reg1, reg2

[Operation]   GR [reg2] ←GR [reg1] − GR [reg2]

[Format]   Format I

[Opcode]

15                    0

```
rrrrr001100RRRRR
```

[Flags]   CY          "1" if a borrow occurs from MSB; otherwise, "0".

          OV          "1" if overflow occurs; otherwise, "0".

          S           "1" if the operation result is negative; otherwise, "0".

          Z           "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

          SAT         —

[Description]   Subtracts the word data of general-purpose register reg2 from the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

<Special instruction>

| | Jump with table look up |
|---|---|
| SWITCH | |
| | Jump with table look up |

[Instruction format]     SWITCH  reg1

[Operation]     adr ← (PC + 2) + (GR [reg1] logically shift left by 1)**Note**

PC ← (PC + 2) + (sign-extend (Load-memory (adr, Halfword) ) ) logically shift left by 1

**Note**   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]     Format I

[Opcode]
```
15                  0
00000000010RRRRR
```

RRRRR ≠ 00000 (Do not specify r0 for reg1.)

[Flags]     CY          —

OV          —

S           —

Z           —

SAT         —

[Description]     The following steps are taken.

(1)          Adds the start address (the one subsequent to the SWITCH instruction) to general-purpose register

reg1, logically left-shifted by 1, to generate a 32-bit table entry address.

(2)          Loads the halfword entry data indicated by the address generated in step (1).

(3)          Adds the table start address after sign-extending the loaded halfword data and logically left-shifting it

by 1 (the one subsequent to the SWITCH instruction) to generate a 32-bit target address.

(4)          Jumps to the target address generated in step (3).

| **Cautions** | 1. Do not specify r0 for reg1. |
|---|---|
| | 2. In the SWITCH instruction memory read operation executed in order to read the table, memory protection is performed. |

<Data manipulation instruction>

| SXB | Sign extend byte |
|-----|------------------|
|     | Sign-extension of byte data |

[Instruction format]    SXB  reg1

[Operation]    GR [reg1] ← sign-extend (GR [reg1] (7:0) )

[Format]    Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                   0
00000000101RRRRR
```

[Flags]    CY         —
           OV         —
           S          —
           Z          —
           SAT        —

[Description]    Sign-extends the lowest byte of general-purpose register reg1 to word length.

<Data manipulation instruction>

---

SXH

Sign extend halfword

Sign-extension of halfword data

---

[Instruction format]     SXH  reg1


[Operation]              GR [reg1] ← sign-extend (GR [reg1] (15:0) )


[Format]                 Format I


[Opcode]          15                     0

00000000111RRRRR


[Flags]           CY          —
                  OV          —
                  S           —
                  Z           —
                  SAT         —


[Description]            Sign-extends the lower halfword of general-purpose register reg1 to word length.

<Special instruction>

| | Synchronize exceptions |
|---|---|
| SYNCE | |
| | Exception synchronization instruction |

[Instruction format]     SYNCE

[Operation]              Waits for the synchronization of exceptions.

[Format]                 Format I

[Opcode]          15                     0

```
0000000000011101
```

[Flags]           CY          —
                  OV          —
                  S           —
                  Z           —
                  SAT         —

[Description]            Waits for the synchronization of all preceding exceptions before starting execution. It does not

                         perform any operation but is completed when its execution is started.

                         If issued, the CPU handles this instruction as the SYNCM instruction.

<Special instruction>

| SYNCI | Synchronize instruction pipeline |
|---|---|
| | Instruction pipeline synchronization instruction |

[Instruction format]    SYNCI

[Operation]    Resolves instruction hazards.

[Format]    Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
0000000000011100
```

[Flags]    CY    —
           OV    —
           S     —
           Z     —
           SAT   —

[Description]    Makes subsequent instructions wait until all the instructions ahead of this instruction have finished
                executing. The instructions executed after the SYNCI instruction are guaranteed to adapt to the
                effects produced by the execution of the instructions preceding SYNCI. This instruction can be used
                to realize "self-programming code" to overwrite instructions in the memory.

[Supplement]    The SYNCI instruction clears the CPU instruction fetch pipeline so that subsequently executed
                instructions are re-fetched.
                If the CPU includes an instruction cache, the instruction cache must be disabled to enable the
                realization of this self-programming code.

<Special instruction>

| SYNCM | Synchronize memory |
|-------|--------------------|
|       | Memory synchronize instruction |

[Instruction format]   SYNCM

[Operation]   Waits for the synchronization of the memory device.

[Format]   Format I

[Opcode]

| 15 | 0 |
|----|---|

```
0000000000011110
```

[Flags]   CY        —

OV        —

S         —

Z         —

SAT       —

[Description]   Synchronizes the CPU execution pipeline and memory accesses.

Waits for the start of execution until all preceding memory access has been synchronized.

"Synchronization" refers to the status where the result of preceding memory accesses can be

referenced by any master device within the system.

In cases such as when buffering is used to delay memory accesses and synchronization of all

memory accesses has not occurred, the SYNCM instruction does not complete and waits for the

synchronization. The subsequent instructions will not be executed until the SYNCM instruction

execution is complete.

This instruction can be used to realize the "synchronization primitive" in a multi-processing

environment, if the above function is provided as the system.

<Special instruction>

| | |
|---|---|
| **SYNCP** | Synchronize pipeline |
| | Pipeline synchronize instruction |

[Instruction format]    SYNCP

[Operation]             Waits for the synchronization of pipeline.

[Format]                Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
0000000000011111
```

[Flags]          CY         —

                 OV         —

                 S          —

                 Z          —

                 SAT        —

[Description]           Waits until execution of all previous instructions is completed before being executed.

<Special instruction>

SYSCALL

System call

System call exception

[Instruction format]   SYSCALL  vector8

[Operation]   EIPC ← PC + 4 (return PC)

EIPSW ← PSW

EIIC ← exception cause code[Note 1]

PSW.UM ← 0

PSW.EP ← 1

PSW.ID ← 1

if (vector8 <= SCCFG.SIZE) is satisfied

then    adr ← SCBP + zero-extend (vector8 logically shift left by 2)[Note 2]

else    adr ← SCBP[Note 2]

PC ← SCBP + Load-memory (adr, Word)

Notes   1.   See Table 4-1  Exception Cause List.

2.   An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]   Format X

[Opcode]

| 15                      0 | 31                16 |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 11010111111vvvvv          | 00VVV00101100000     |

Where VVV is the higher 3 bits of vector8 and vvvvv is the lower 5 bits of vector8.

[Flags]   CY        —

OV        —

S         —

Z         —

SAT       —

[Description]          <1>    Saves the contents of the return PC (address of the instruction next to the SYSCALL

instruction) and PSW to EIPC and EIPSW.

<2>    Stores the exception cause code corresponding to vector8 in the EIIC register.

The exception cause code is the value of vector8 plus 8000H.

<3>    Updates the PSW according to the exception causes listed in **Table 4-1**.

<4>    Generates a 32-bit table entry address by adding the value of the SCBP register and vector8

that is logically shifted 2 bits to the left and zero-extended to a word length.

If vector8 is greater than the value specified by the SIZE bit of system register SCCFG; however,

vector8 that is used for the generation of a 32-bit table entry address is handled as 0.

<5>    Loads the word of the address generated in <4>.

<6>    Generates a 32-bit target address by adding the value of the SCBP register to the data in <5>.

<7>    Branches to the target address generated in <6>.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Caution** | In the SYSCALL instruction memory read operation executed in order to read the table, memory protection is performed with the supervisor privilege. |

<Special instruction>

|  | Trap |
|---|---|
| TRAP | |
| | Software exception |

[Instruction format]   TRAP  vector5

[Operation]   EIPC ← PC + 4 (return PC)

EIPSW ← PSW

EIIC ← exception cause code[Note 1]

PSW.UM ← 0

PSW.EP ← 1

PSW.ID ← 1

PC ← exception handler address[Note 2]

Notes   1.   See Table 4-1  Exception Cause List.

2.   See 4.5  Exception Handler Address.

[Format]   Format X

[Opcode]

```
15              0 31              16
00000111111vvvvv 0000000100000000
```

vvvvv = vector5

[Flags]   CY   —

OV   —

S   —

Z   —

SAT   —

[Description]        Saves the contents of the return PC (address of the instruction next to the TRAP instruction) and the current contents of the PSW to EIPC and EIPSW, respectively, stores the exception cause code in the EIIC register, and updates the PSW according to the exception causes listed in **Table 4-1**. Execution then branches to the exception handler address and exception handling is started.

The following table shows the correspondence between vector5 and exception cause codes and exception handler address offset. Exception handler addresses are calculated based on the offset addresses listed in the following table. For details, see **4.5  Exception Handler Address**.

| vector5 | Exception Cause Code | Offset Address |
|---|---|---|
| 00H | 00000040H | 40H |
| 01H | 00000041H | |
| ... | | |
| 0FH | 0000004FH | |
| 10H | 00000050H | 50H |
| 11H | 00000051H | |
| ... | | |
| 1FH | 0000005FH | |

<Logical instruction>

| | Test |
|---|---|
| TST | |
| | Test |

[Instruction format]    TST  reg1, reg2

[Operation]             result ← GR [reg2] AND GR [reg1]

[Format]                Format I

[Opcode]
```
15                      0
rrrrr001011RRRRR
```

[Flags]         CY          —

                OV          0

                S           "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".

                Z           "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, 0.

                SAT         —

[Description]   ANDs the word data of general-purpose register reg2 with the word data of general-purpose register
                reg1. The result is not stored with only the flags being changed. General-purpose registers reg1 and
                reg2 are not affected.

<Bit manipulation instruction>

| TST1 | Test bit |
| --- | --- |
| | Bit test |

[Instruction format]      (1)      TST1  bit#3, disp16 [reg1]

                          (2)      TST1  reg2, [reg1]

[Operation]               (1)      adr ← GR [reg1] + sign-extend (disp16)[Note]

                          token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

                          Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, bit#3) )

                          (2)      adr ← GR [reg1][Note]

                          token ← Load-memory (adr, Byte)

                          Z flag ← Not (extract-bit (token, reg2) )

          **Note**    An MDP exception might occur depending on the result of address calculation.

[Format]                  (1)      Format VIII

                          (2)      Format IX

[Opcode]

                          15                  0 31               16
                   (1)    `11bbb111110RRRRR` `dddddddddddddddd`
                          15                  0 31               16
                   (2)    `rrrrr111111RRRRR` `0000000011100110`

[Flags]         CY         —

                OV         —

                S          —

                Z          "1" if bit specified by operand = "0", "0" if bit specified by operand = "1".

                SAT        —

[Description]      (1)      Adds the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to the16-bit displacement data, sign-

                  extended to word length, to generate a 32-bit address; checks the bit specified by the 3-bit bit

                  number at the byte data location referenced by the generated address. If the specified bit is "0", "1"

                  is set to the Z flag of PSW and if the bit is "1", the Z flag is cleared to "0". The byte data, including

                  the specified bit, is not affected.

                  (2)      Reads the word data of general-purpose register reg1 to generate a 32-bit address; checks

                  the bit specified by the lower 3 bits of reg2 at the byte data location referenced by the generated

                  address. If the specified bit is "0", "1" is set to the Z flag of PSW and if the bit is "1", the Z flag is

                  cleared to "0". The byte data, including the specified bit, is not affected.

<Logical instruction>

| XOR | Exclusive OR |
| --- | --- |
| | Exclusive OR |

[Instruction format]   XOR  reg1, reg2

[Operation]   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg2] XOR GR [reg1]

[Format]   Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
rrrrr001001RRRRR
```

[Flags]   CY   —

OV   0

S   "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".

Z   "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".

SAT   —

[Description]   Exclusively ORs the word data of general-purpose register reg2 with the word data of general-purpose register reg1 and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

<Logical instruction>

| XORI | Exclusive OR immediate (16-bit)<br><br>Exclusive OR immediate |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------|

[Instruction format]   XORI  imm16, reg1, reg2

[Operation]   GR [reg2] ← GR [reg1] XOR zero-extend (imm16)

[Format]   Format VI

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31                16
rrrrr110101RRRRR iiiiiiiiiiiiiiii
```

[Flags]   CY        —
          OV        0
          S         "1" if operation result word data MSB is "1"; otherwise, "0".
          Z         "1" if the operation result is "0"; otherwise, "0".
          SAT       —

[Description]   Exclusively ORs the word data of general-purpose register reg1 with the 16-bit immediate data, zero-extended to word length, and stores the result in general-purpose register reg2. General-purpose register reg1 is not affected.

<Data manipulation instruction>

| ZXB | Zero extend byte |
|---|---|
| | Zero-extension of byte data |

[Instruction format]    ZXB  reg1

[Operation]    GR [reg1] ← zero-extend (GR [reg1] (7:0) )

[Format]    Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
00000000100RRRRR
```

[Flags]    CY    —
           OV    —
           S     —
           Z     —
           SAT   —

[Description]    Zero-extends the lowest byte of general-purpose register reg1 to word length.

<Data manipulation instruction>

ZXH

Zero extend halfword

Zero-extension of halfword data

[Instruction format]    ZXH  reg1

[Operation]    GR [reg1] ← zero-extend (GR [reg1] (15:0) )

[Format]    Format I

[Opcode]

```
15                    0
00000000110RRRRR
```

[Flags]    CY    —
           OV    —
           S     —
           Z     —
           SAT   —

[Description]    Zero-extends the lower halfword of general-purpose register reg1 to word length.

## 6.3  Cache Instructions

### 6.3.1  Overview of Cache Instructions

This CPU does not have a cache and so does not have cache instructions.

- CACHE [Note1]:      Cache
- PREF [Note1]:        Prefetch

Note 1.     The CACHE and PREF instructions are handled as NOP instructions.

### 6.3.2  Cache Instruction Set

This section details each instruction, dividing each mnemonic (in alphabetical order) into the following items.

- Instruction format:       Indicates how the instruction is written and its operand(s).
- Operation:                  Indicates the function of the instruction.
- Format:                     Indicates the instruction format.
- Opcode:                     Indicates the bit field of the instruction opcode.
- Description:                Describes the operation of the instruction.
- Supplement:                 Provides supplementary information on the instruction.

<Cache instruction>

| | |
|---|---|
| | Cache |
| CACHE | |
| | Cache operation |

[Instruction format]    CACHE  cacheop, [reg1]


[Operation]        No operation is performed.


[Format]         Format X


[Opcode]

```
15              0 31              16
111pp111111RRRRR PPPPP00101100000
```

ppPPPPP indicates cacheop.


[Flags]        CY        —
           OV        —
           S         —
           Z         —
           SAT        —


[Description]      This CPU handles the CACHE instruction as the NOP instruction.

<Cache instruction>

| | Prefetch |
|---|---|
| **PREF** | |
| | Prefetch |

[Instruction format]     PREF  prefop, [reg1]

[Operation]          No operation is performed.

[Format]             Format X

[Opcode]

```
15                0 31               16
11011111111RRRRR  PPPPP00101100000
```

PPPPP indicates prefop.

[Flags]          CY       —
                 OV       —
                 S        —
                 Z        —
                 SAT      —

[Description]        This CPU handles the PREF instruction as the NOP instruction.

# CHAPTER 7  RESET

## 7.1    Status of Registers After Reset

If a reset signal is input by a method defined by the hardware specifications, the program registers and system registers are placed in the status shown by the value after reset of each register in **CHAPTER 3  REGISTER SET**, and program execution is started. Set the contents of each register to an appropriate value in the program.

The CPU executes a reset to start execution of a program from the reset address specified by **4.5  Exception Handler Address**.

Note that because the PSW.ID bit is set (1) immediately after a reset, conditional EI level exceptions will not be acknowledged. To acknowledge conditional EI level exceptions, clear (0) the PSW.ID bit.

# APPENDIX A   HAZARD RESOLUTION PROCEDURE FOR SYSTEM REGISTERS

Certain system registers require the following procedures to resolve hazards when their values are updated in the case of the instructions listed below.

- Instruction fetching

When an instruction is to be fetched after updating a register covered by the description below, after executing the instruction to update the register, only allow the instruction fetch to start after execution of an EIRET, FERET, or SYNCI instruction.

- PSW.UM   MCFG0.SPID

When an instruction is to be fetched after updating a register covered by the description below, execute the instruction to update the register before allowing the instruction fetch to start.

- All registers related to ASID and MPU (register number: SR*,5-7)

- SYSCALL instruction

When a SYSCALL instruction is to be executed after updating the register below, execute a SYNCP instruction after the instruction to update the register and before the SYSCALL instruction.

-SCCFG

- Load/Store

When an instruction associated with Load/Store after updating the registers below, execute a SYNCP instruction after executing the instruction to update the registers before Load/Store instruction.

-ASID   MPU protection area setting register (Register number: SR*,6-7)

- Interrupt

Update the registers below when interrupt is inhibited. (PSW.ID = 1).

-PSW.EBV   EBASE   INTBP   ISPR   PMR   ICSR   INTCFG

RENESAS

# APPENDIX B   NUMBER OF INSTRUCTION EXECTUION CLOCKS

# B.1 Number of G3K Instruction Execution Clocks

1) Basic instruction

| Types of Instructions | Mnemonics | Operand | Instruction Length (Number of Bytes) | Number of Execution Clocks | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | issue | repeat | latency |
| Load instruction | LD.B | disp16 [reg1] , reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | | disp23 [reg1] , reg3 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | LD.BU | disp16 [reg1] , reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | | disp23 [reg1] , reg3 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | LD.H | disp16 [reg1] , reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | | disp23 [reg1] , reg3 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | LD.HU | disp16 [reg1] , reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | | disp23 [reg1] , reg3 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | LD.W | disp16 [reg1] , reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | | disp23 [reg1] , reg3 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | LD.DW | disp23 [reg1] , reg3 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 4*1 |
| ep relative | SLD.B | disp7 [ep] , reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | SLD.BU | disp4 [ep] , reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | SLD.H | disp8 [ep] , reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | SLD.HU | disp5 [ep] , reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| | SLD.W | disp8 [ep] , reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2*1 |
| Store instrucrion | ST.B | reg2, disp16 [reg1] | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg3, disp23 [reg1] | 6 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ST.H | reg2, disp16 [reg1] | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg3, disp23 [reg1] | 6 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ST.W | reg2, disp16 [reg1] | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg3, disp23 [reg1] | 6 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ST.DW | reg3, disp23 [reg1] | 6 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| ep relative | SST.B | reg2, disp7 [ep] | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SST.H | reg2, disp8 [ep] | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SST.W | reg2, disp8 [ep] | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Multiplication instruction | MUL | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 4 |
| | | imm9, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 4 |
| | MULH | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | MULHI | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | MULU | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 4 |
| | | imm9, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 4 |
| Multiply-accumulate operation | MAC | reg1, reg2, reg3, reg4 | 4 | 2 | 5 | 5 |
| | MACU | reg1, reg2, reg3, reg4 | 4 | 2 | 5 | 5 |
| Arithmetic instruction | ADD | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ADDI | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | CMP | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | MOV | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm32, reg1 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | MOVEA | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | MOVHI | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SUB | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SUBR | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Operation with condition | ADF | cccc, reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SBF | cccc, reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Saturated operation | SATADD | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SATSUB | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SATSUBI | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SATSUBR | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Logical instruction | AND | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ANDI | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | NOT | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | OR | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ORI | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | TST | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | XOR | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | XORI | imm16, reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

## 1) Basic instruction

| Type of Instructions | Mnemonics | Operand | Instruction Length (Number of Bytes) | Number of Excution Clocks | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | issue | repeat | latency |
| Data operation instruction | BINS | reg1, pos, width, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | BSH | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | BSW | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | CMOV | cccc, reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | cccc, imm5, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | HSH | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | HSW | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ROTL | imm5, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SAR | reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SASF | cccc, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SETF | cccc, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SHL | reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SHR | reg1, reg2 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | imm5, reg2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SXB | reg1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SXH | reg1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ZXB | reg1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | ZXH | reg1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Bit search instruction | SCH0L | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SCH0R | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SCH1L | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | SCH1R | reg2, reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Division instruction | DIV | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 36 | 36 | 36 |
| | DIVH | reg1, reg2 | 2 | 36 | 36 | 36 |
| | | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 36 | 36 | 36 |
| | DIVHU | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 35 | 35 | 35 |
| | DIVU | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | 35 | 35 | 35 |
| High-speed divide operation | DIVQ | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | N+7[*2] | N+7[*2] | N+7[*2] |
| | DIVQU | reg1, reg2, reg3 | 4 | N+6[*2] | N+6[*2] | N+6[*2] |
| Branch instructions | Bcond | disp9 (When Branch prediction is matched) | 2 | 1[*3] | 1[*3] | 1[*3] |
| | | disp9 (When Branch prediction is not matched) | 2 | 2[*3] | 2[*3] | 2[*3] |
| | Bcond | disp17 (When Branch prediction is matched) | 4 | 1[*3] | 1[*3] | 1[*3] |
| | | disp17 (When Branch prediction is not matched) | 4 | 2[*3] | 2[*3] | 2[*3] |
| | JARL | disp22, reg2 | 4 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| | | disp32, reg1 | 6 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| | | [reg1], reg3 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| | JMP | [reg1] | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| | | disp32 [reg1] | 6 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| | JR | disp22 | 4 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| | JR | disp32 | 6 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| Loop instruction | JOOP | reg1, disp16 (When reg1 is 0 after updating) | 4 | 2[*3] | 2[*3] | 2[*3] |
| | | reg1, disp16 (When reg1 is not 0 after updating) | 4 | 5[*3] | 5[*3] | 5[*3] |
| Bit manipulation instruction | CLR1 | bit#3, disp16 [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |
| | | reg2, [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |
| | NOT1 | bit#3, disp16 [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |
| | | reg2, [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |
| | SET1 | bit#3, disp16 [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |
| | | reg2, [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |
| | TST1 | bit#3, disp16 [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |
| | | reg2, [reg1] | 4 | 3[*4] | 3[*4] | 3[*4] |

1) Basic instruction

| Type of Instructions | | Mnemonics | Operand | Instruction Length (Number of Bytes) | Number of Excution Clocks | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | issue | repeat | latency |
| Special instruction | | | | | | | |
| | Table reference branch | SWITCH | reg1 | 2 | 5 | 5 | 5 |
| | Sub routine call | CALLT | imm6 | 2 | 5 | 5 | 5 |
| | | CTRET | | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| | System call exception | SYSCALL | vector8 | 4 | 6 | 6 | 6 |
| | Software exception | FETRAP | vector | 2 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| | | TRAP | vector5 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| | Return from exception processing | EIRET | | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| | | FERET | | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| | EI level interrupt | DI | | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | EI | | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | Restoration from & storage on stack | DISPOSE | imm5, list12 | 4 | n+1[*5] | n+1[*5] | n+1[*5] |
| | | | imm5, list12, [reg1] | 4 | n+3[*5] | n+3[*5] | n+3[*5] |
| | | PREPARE | list12, imm5 | 4 | n+1[*5] | n+1[*5] | n+1[*5] |
| | | | list12, imm5, sp | 4 | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] |
| | | | list12, imm5, imm16 | 6 | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] |
| | | | list12, imm5, imm16<<16 | 6 | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] |
| | | | list12, imm5, imm32 | 8 | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] | n+2[*5] |
| | | POPSP | rh-rt | 4 | n+1[*6] | n+1[*6] | n+1[*6] |
| | | PUSHSP | rh-rt | 4 | n+21[*6] | n+1[*6] | n+1[*6] |
| | System register operation | LDSR | reg2, regID, selID | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | STSR | regID, reg2, selID | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | Exclusive control | CAXI | [reg1], reg2, reg3 | 4 | 5[*4] | 5[*4] | 5[*4] |
| | | LDL.W[Note A] | [reg1], reg3 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2[*1] |
| | | STC.W[Note A] | reg3, [reg1] | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | Stop | HALT | | 4 | Undefined | Undefined | Undefined |
| | | SYOOZE | | 4 | Undefined | Undefined | Undefined |
| | Synchronization | SYNCE | | 2 | Undefined | Undefined | Undefined |
| | | SYNCI | | 2 | Undefined | Undefined | Undefined |
| | | SYNCM | | 2 | Undefined | Undefined | Undefined |
| | | SYNCP | | 2 | Undefined | Undefined | Undefined |
| | Others | NOP | | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | RIE | | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 |

2) Cache instruction

| Type of Instructions | Mnemonics | Operand | Instruction Length (Number of Bytes) | Number of Execution Clocks | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | issue | repeat | latency |
| Cache operation instruction | CACHE | cacheop, [reg1] | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Pre-fetch instruction | PREF | prefop, [reg1] | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

Note 1. These values are for access to the RAM area, where there are no wait states (2 + number of read access wait states).
   In access to areas other than the RAM area, the value is 3 (3 + number of read access wait states).

Note 2. N = (number of valid bits in absolute value of dividend) – (number of valid bits in absolute value of divisor)
   However, if N < 1, N becomes 1. Division by 0 leads to N being 1. The range of N is from 1 to 31.

Note 3. When an instruction to rewrite the contents of the PSW register immediately precedes this instruction, the value will be the number of clock cycles for execution + 1.

Note 4. This value is for access to the RAM area, where there are no wait states (2 + number of read access wait states). In access to areas other than the RAM area, the value is 4 (4 + number of read access wait states). For the CAXI instruction, the value will be the number of clock cycles for execution of a bit manipulation instruction + 2.

Note 5. "n" depends on the total number of registers specified in the list. When there are no wait states, the values are as shown below.
   PREPARE: Minimum value is 0, maximum value is 12
   DISPOSE: Minimum value is 1, maximum value is 12 (if accompanied by JMP, add 2 clock cycles).
   When n is 0, 1 clock cycle is required. (DISPOSE instruction with JMP: 3 clock cycles)

Note 6. "n" depends on the total number of registers specified by rh-rt. When there are no wait states, the values are as
shown below.
PUSHSP: Minimum value is 0, maximum value is 32
POPSP: Minimum value is 0, maximum value is 12

Note A. This CPU does not support exclusive control for LDL.W and STC.W. Also, the LDL.W and STC.W instructions are
handled as the LD.W and ST.W instructions, respectively.

Note B. This instruction is handled as the NOP instruction.

Remark 1. Example of execution clocks

| Symbol | Description |
|--------|-------------|
| issue | When the other instruction is executed immediately after the execution of the current instruction |
| repeat | When the same instruction is repeated immediately after the execution of the current instruction |
| latency | When the following instruction uses the result of the current instruction |

# APPENDIX C   REGISTER INDEX

# APPENDIX D    INSTRUCTION INDEX

# APPENDIX E   REVISION  HISTORY

## E.1  Major Revisions in This Edition

| Page | Description | Classification |
|------|-------------|----------------|
| RH850G3K User's Manual: Software | | |
| — | First Edition issued | — |

**Remark**: The classification in the table above means as follows.

(a): Error correction (b): Specifications added or changed (c): descriptions or notes added or changed

# RENESAS

**SALES OFFICES**                   Renesas Electronics Corporation                   http://www.renesas.com

Refer to "http://www.renesas.com/" for the latest and detailed information.

**Renesas Electronics America Inc.**
2801 Scott Boulevard Santa Clara, CA 95050-2549, U.S.A.
Tel:  +1-408-588-6000, Fax: +1-408-588-6130

**Renesas Electronics Canada Limited**
1101 Nicholson Road, Newmarket, Ontario L3Y 9C3, Canada
Tel: +1-905-898-5441, Fax: +1-905-898-3220

**Renesas Electronics Europe Limited**
Dukes Meadow, Millboard Road, Bourne End, Buckinghamshire, SL8 5FH, U.K
Tel: +44-1628-585-100, Fax: +44-1628-585-900

**Renesas Electronics Europe GmbH**
Arcadiastrasse 10, 40472 Düsseldorf, Germany
Tel: +49-211-6503-0, Fax: +49-211-6503-1327

**Renesas Electronics (China) Co., Ltd.**
Room 1709, Quantum Plaza, No.27 ZhiChunLu Haidian District, Beijing 100191, P.R.China
Tel: +86-10-8235-1155, Fax: +86-10-8235-7679

**Renesas Electronics (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.**
Unit 301, Tower A, Central Towers, 555 Langao Road, Putuo District, Shanghai, P. R. China 200333
Tel: +86-21-2226-0888, Fax: +86-21-2226-0999

**Renesas Electronics Hong Kong Limited**
Unit 1601-1613, 16/F., Tower 2, Grand Century Place, 193 Prince Edward Road West, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-2265-6688, Fax: +852 2886-9022/9044

**Renesas Electronics Taiwan Co., Ltd.**
13F, No. 363, Fu Shing North Road, Taipei 10543, Taiwan
Tel: +886-2-8175-9600, Fax: +886 2-8175-9670

**Renesas Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.**
80 Bendemeer Road, Unit #06-02 Hyflux Innovation Centre, Singapore 339949
Tel: +65-6213-0200, Fax: +65-6213-0300

**Renesas Electronics Malaysia Sdn.Bhd.**
Unit 906, Block B, Menara Amcorp, Amcorp Trade Centre, No. 18, Jln Persiaran Barat, 46050 Petaling Jaya, Selangor Darul Ehsan, Malaysia
Tel: +60-3-7955-9390, Fax: +60-3-7955-9510

**Renesas Electronics Korea Co., Ltd.**
12F., 234 Teheran-ro, Gangnam-Ku, Seoul, 135-920, Korea
Tel: +82-2-558-3737, Fax: +82-2-558-5141

RH850G3K